WO 03/038043 *166166* PCT/US02/34420

G00002

COMBINATIONS OF ANTIBODIES SELECTIVE FOR A TUMOR NECROSIS FACTOR-RELATED APOPTOSIS-INDUCING LIGAND RECEPTOR AND OTHER THERAPEUTIC AGENTS

Acknowledgements

This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application Number 60/391,478, filed June 24, 2002, and U.S. Provisional Application Number 60/346,402, filed on November 1, 2001, and claims priority to PCT/US01/14151, filed May 2001, which is currently pending. PCT/US01/14151 claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application Number 60/201,344, filed May 2, 2000. The applications to which the present application claims benefit are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety.

This invention was made with government support under Grant NCI P50 CA 89019-01 awarded by the National Cancer Institute and under NIH R03-AR44982 awarded by the National Institute of Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases. The government has certain rights in the invention.

Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to an antibody capable of specifically binding a single type of tumor necrosis factor (hereinafter referred to as "TNF")-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (hereinafter referred to as "TRAIL") receptor, more particularly, to a monoclonal antibody that induces apoptosis in *in vivo* and in *vitro* cells expressing the single type receptor and therapies based thereon.

Background of the Invention

TRAIL is a member of the TNF family of proteins, which also includes TNF-α and Fas ligand (1). These proteins are potent inducers of apoptosis. To date, five receptors for TRAIL have been identified, two of which, DR4 (TRAIL-R1) and DR5 (TRAIL-R2) (2-7), are capable of transducing the apoptosis signal while the other three DcR1 (TRAIL-R3), DcR2 (TRAIL-R4), and osteoprotegerin (OPG) do not transduce the apoptosis signal (8-12). All five receptors for TRAIL share significant homology in their extracellular ligand binding domains. Similar to Fas

and TNF receptor I (hereinafter referred to as "TNFRI"), the intracellular segments of both DR4 and DR5 contain a death domain, and transduce an apoptosis signal through a pathway that involves the Fas-associated death domain protein (hereinafter referred to as "FADD") and caspase 8 (6,7). In addition to transducing the apoptosis signal, the DR4 and DR5 receptors can also activate a pathway involving NFκb (6,7).

The biological functions of TRAIL that have been demonstrated include the capability of TRAIL to selectively induce apoptosis of transformed tumor cells, with normal cells being relatively resistant to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis (13-15). This selectivity suggests that, in contrast to Fas ligand, the administration of TRAIL is associated with very low levels of toxicity as demonstrated by systemic administration of TRAIL in an animal model without inducing significant toxicity (13). Thus, TRAIL has been proposed as a potent apoptosis inducing agent that would be a suitable therapeutic agent for the treatment of cancer and other diseases associated with abnormal cell proliferation. TRAIL also has been proposed to be a potent apoptosis-inducing agent that would be suitable for the treatment of autoimmune and inflammatory diseases. It has been demonstrated that TRAIL-mediated apoptosis is involved in activation-induced cell death of T cells, thereby serving as an alternative mechanism to Fas ligand (16,17). TRAIL-mediated apoptosis may also function in the induction of apoptosis of T cells and other inflammatory cells (18), and plays a role in the killing activity of NK cells (19-21), and in the immunomodulatory function of dendritic cells (22,23). Thus, TRAIL-mediated apoptosis may also function in immunoprivilege and immunosurveillance.

The TRAIL receptor system is complex, and includes at least two death receptors, DR4 and DR5, and at least two non-apoptotic receptors, DcR1 and DcR2. All of these receptors not only share a high amino acid sequence homology, but also exhibit a similar binding affinity to TRAIL (2-12). The ability of the DcR1 and DcR2 receptors to compete for binding of TRAIL without inducing apoptosis suggests that they may act as decoy receptors that block or modulate the activity of

the TRAIL ligand. Moreover, it has been reported that untransformed cells express higher levels of decoy receptors than do transformed cells. Thus, it has been proposed that the differential modulation of the expression of the death and decoy receptors may represent a key regulatory mechanism that determines the susceptibility of cells to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis, but due to the lack of receptor-specific antibodies (2). Although the expression and function of DR4 and DR5 have been studied extensively, progress has been impeded by the lack of receptor-specific monoclonal antibodies. The cell surface expression of DR5 has not been documented. It has been reported that a panel of anti-TRAIL receptor antibodies have been generated that are capable of inducing apoptosis of melanoma cells *in vitro* but only upon immobilization of the antibodies, to promote cross-linking, and, in some cases, the cells require culturing with actinomycin D (24). Several anti-DR5 antibodies have been generated (24). However, these previously generated anti-DR5 monoclonal antibodies have low apoptosis-inducing activity *in vitro*, even under the conditions of crosslinking. No *in vivo* activity has been reported. These antibodies have not been used for examining cell surface expression of TRAIL receptors (24). Thus, there exists a need for a monoclonal antibody selective for each specific TRAIL receptor that is not only able to bind to cell surface receptor but also to strongly induce apoptosis of various types of abnormal cells, including tumor cells, both *in vivo* and *vitro* without the requirement for crosslinking or immobilization. Such an antibody would not only provide potential therapeutic agent but also a diagnostic tool for functional analysis of TRAIL receptor. There exists a particular need for an antibody specific against each of the death inducing receptors DR4 and DR5.

In the development, or progression, of many diseases it is often the case that cells are not deleted. In many autoimmune diseases and inflammatory conditions, the surviving activated cells attack normal tissues or cells. Further, progression of tumorigenesis and the proliferative panus formation of rheumatoid arthritis are characterized by the unchecked proliferation of cells. Thus, insufficient apoptosis

leads to the development of disease, and the uses of apoptosis-inducing ligand or agonistic monoclonal antibody to enhance apoptosis are considered as a potential therapeutic strategy for eliminating those unwanted cells.

For example, rheumatoid arthritis (hereinafter referred to as "RA") is a common human autoimmune disease. The current understanding of the pathophysiology of RA is that autoimmune T cells and B cells initiate an inflammatory response in the joints, which drives hyperproliferation of the synoviocytes. As a consequence of the hyperproliferation of synovial cells, metalloproteinases (hereinafter referred to as "MMPs") are over-produced, which further leads to the erosive destruction of the cartilage and bone that is characteristic of RA (25). Thus, the control of hyperproliferation of inflammatory synovial cells is a key step in the treatment of RA. The molecular mechanisms leading to the hyperproliferation of synovial cells are still unknown. Although the hyperproliferative synovial cells are non-malignant and non-transformed, many studies have suggested that they share some common features with transformed cells (46). These cells, the so-called, "transformed-appearing synoviocytes", are characterized by a dense rough endoplasmic reticulum, numerous irregular nuclei, and changes in the normally spindle-shaped cell skeleton. It has been proposed that the incorporation of the oncogenes and virus-derived genes might be the primary triggers for the transformed appearance of RA synovial cells (46).

At least two aspects of RA suggest that dysregulated apoptosis may contribute to the disease process and that therapeutic elicitation of apoptosis may be an effective treatment: the failure of the deletion of the activated T cells suggests that there is defective activation-induced cell death of these T cells, which is a process that involves Fas-mediated apoptosis and TRAIL-mediated apoptosis, and the hyperproliferative nature of the RA synovial cells is a contributing factor in the later stages of RA pathophysiology. Indeed, it has been shown that the administration of anti-Fas antibody into the inflammatory joint inhibits the development of chronic arthritis in *tax* transgenic mice, which are an animal model

for human RA (26). Moreover, localized transduction with the *fas ligand* gene by an adenoviral vector is effective in prevention of collagen-induced arthritis (27). Inhibition of the proliferation of inflammatory synovial cells by enhancement of Fas-mediated apoptosis is observed in both cases. Although Fas ligand is a strong apoptosis inducer in RA synovial cells, the application of Fas ligand-mediated apoptosis as a therapy for humans has been limited by lethal liver toxicity. Thus, TRAIL receptor induced apoptosis represents a safer and more effective therapeutic for the treatment of RA than Fas-ligand induced apoptosis.

TRAIL receptor induced apoptosis also represents a safer and more effective therapeutic for the treatment of cancer than Fas-ligand induced apoptosis. TRAIL-mediated apoptosis is known to specifically induce apoptosis of transformed tumor cells without affecting normal cells. It has been shown that the systemic administration of the trimerized soluble TRAIL did not cause toxicity in experimental animals yet was able to induce regression of implanted tumors (13,28). Its potential as an adjunctive therapy for traditional treatments was underscored by the recent finding that the expression of DR5 and susceptibility to TRAIL-induced apoptosis of breast cancer cells is enhanced by the radiation, suggesting that combined with radiation, the efficiency of TRAIL would be increased in cancer therapy (29).

In addition, the gene encoding the TRAIL receptor DR5 has been mapped to chromosome 8p21-22, loci with a high frequency of mutation in some cancer cells (30). It has been reported that at least two kinds of tumor cells, small lung cancer (31) and head and neck cancer (32) exhibit mutations in the death domain of the DR5 gene. Thus, there exists a need for an anti-DR5 antibody in cancer research to determine the effect of receptor epitope variation on the development and progression of cancers. Further, the functionality of TRAIL receptor mutations would prove a useful clinical diagnostic tool when used in conjunction with other biomarkers in the early detection of cancers and as a predictor of the tumor aggressiveness.

Summary of the Invention

In one embodiment, the invention relates to an antibody which recognizes a TRAIL receptor DR5 and which induces apoptosis in a DR5-expressing cell *in vivo* or *in vitro*. Further disclosed is an antibody that recognizes DR5 but not DR4, DcR1, or DcR2. Specifically detailed is a monoclonal antibody to DR5 produced by a hybridoma.

In another embodiment, the invention relates to an antibody which recognizes a TRAIL receptor DR4 and which induces apoptosis in a DR4-expressing cell *in vivo* or *in vitro*. Further disclosed is an antibody that recognizes DR4 but not DR5, DcR1, or DcR2. Specifically detailed is a monoclonal antibody to DR4 produced by a hybridoma.

A method provided is induction of apoptosis in target cells or inhibition of target cell proliferation by contacting a cell with a therapeutic quantity of an antibody capable of binding to DR5 or DR4. In various embodiments of the method, the apoptosis can be induced or the cell proliferation inhibited by contacting the target cells with antibodies against other death receptors.

Also disclosed is a pharmacological composition that includes a therapeutic amount of monoclonal antibody active against a DR5, a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and, optionally, a container enclosing the antibody and the carrier. Further provided by the invention is the use of an antibody recognizing DR5 or an antibody recognizing DR4 for preparing a therapeutic for selective apoptosis of abnormal or dysregulated cells.

An antibody of the present invention interacts with a tumor necrosis factor related apoptosis-inducing ligand receptor such as DR4, DR5, DrR1, DrR2 and OPG, inducing apoptosis in a cell expressing such a receptor. Disclosed is an antibody of the invention capable of selectively binding an agonistic or antagonistic tumor necrosis factor ligand receptor epitope.

The present invention provides a treatment for an apoptosis related disease, cancer, inflammatory disease, or an autoimmune disease by a method that includes

contacting a target tissue having the disease to a therapeutic quantity of an antibody of the invention, singly or in combination with other apoptosis inducing antibodies, and/or other therapeutic agents or treatments.

Further described is a fusion protein that includes an antigenic TRAIL receptor amino acid sequence having at least ten bases, coupled to an immunoglobulin protein or fragment thereof capable of eliciting an immune response within a subject.

The present invention provides a method of gene therapy in which a target cell is transfected with a TRAIL receptor nucleic acid sequence in an expression vector so that the TRAIL receptor is expressed on the target cell. The target cell is then exposed to an antibody that selectively binds the TRAIL receptor.

Provided are nucleic acid sequences and amino acid sequences encoding the heavy and light chain immunoglobulins of an antibody selective for DR5. Sequences are also provided for an antibody that selectively binds DR4. Also detailed are vectors that include a nucleic acid sequence of the invention and host cells transformed with a vector of the invention.

The present invention provides a humanized DR5 antibody (e.g.,TRA-8) and a humanized DR4 (e.g., 2E12), as well as a transfected cell producing the humanized DR5 antibody and a transfected cell producing the humanized DR4 antibody.

A process for producing a humanized DR5 antibody or DR4 antibody is described in which a host is transformed with nucleic acid sequences encoding a humanized immunoglobulin light chain and a humanized immunoglobulin heavy chain after which the transformed host is incubated for a predetermined period of time.

Also described is a process for inducing apoptosis in target cells or for inhibiting cell proliferation that includes contacting a target cell with a pharmaceutically effective amount of a humanized DR5 antibody, a humanized DR4 antibody, or a combination of a DR5 antibody and an antibody to another death

receptor(e.g., an antibody to DR4), in the presence or absence of other therapeutic agents and treatments.

A commercial kit is provided for inducing apoptosis that includes a humanized TRA-8 antibody selective for DR5 or a humanized antibody for DR4 (e.g., humanized 2E12), packaged in a suitable container, and optionally with instructions for use.

Brief Description of the Drawings

Figure 1. Characterization of TRA-8. (a.) Binding specificity of TRA-8: Western blot analysis (upper panel): Recombinant fusion proteins of the TNFR family probed with TRA-8 or anti-human IgG. Lane 1: DR5/hIgG1 fusion protein (immunogen); Lane 2: DR4/hIgG1 (TRAIL-R1); Lane 3: DR5/hIgG1; Lane 4: TRAIL-R3 (DcR-1)/hIgG1; Lane 5: TRAIL-R4 (DcR-2)/hIgG1; Lane 6, CD95/hIgG1; Lane 7: soluble TNFRI. ELISA analysis (lower panel): The well numbers match those of the Western blot except well 8 which is a murine DR5/hIgG1 fusion protein. (b.) Binding activity of soluble TRAIL and TRA-8 to DR5 and DR4: ELISA plates were coated with DR5/hIgG1 (left panel) or DR4/hIgG1 (middle panel) and then incubated with TRAIL or TRA-8. (c.) Flow cytometry analysis of the surface expression of DR5. Cos-7 cells transfected with pcDNA3 expression vector containing the full-length DR5 cDNA (solid histogram), DR4 cDNA (open histogram, solid line) or empty vector (open histogram, dashed line). Forty-eight hours after transfection, cells were stained with TRA-8 followed by PE-conjugated anti-mouse IgG1. (d.) in situ immunohistochemistry reactivity for DR5: Cytospin slides of Cos-7 cells transfected with DR5 expression or control vector were stained with TRA-8 at 48 hours after transfection, (e.) Killing activity of TRA-8: Jurkat cells were incubated with the indicated concentrations of TRA-8. Cell viability was determined by ATPLite, MTT, and PI exclusion assays after overnight culture. The results of ATPLite and MTT assays are presented as percent of medium control, and PI assay are presented as percent of PI negative cells (f.)

Western blot analysis of caspase activation: Jurkat cells were incubated with 500 ng/ml TRA-8 for indicated time. Cell lysates were separated by 15% SDS-PAGE, blotted, and probed with anti-caspase antibodies. The arrows indicate the cleaved subunits of each caspase. g. Caspase inhibition assay: Jurkat cells were incubated with 50 ng/ml TRA-8 overnight in the presence of various concentrations of indicated caspase inhibitors. Cell viability was determined by the ATPLite assay.

Figure 2. Cell surface expression of DR5 and susceptibility to DR5-mediated apoptosis. Normal T and B cells, freshly isolated from peripheral blood, T cell (a and a′), glioma (b and b′), prostate cancer cell (c) and B cell (d) cell lines were incubated with TRA-8 or murine IgG1 isotype control antibody followed by PE-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG1. The open histograms represent the isotype antibody control while the solid histograms represent TRA-8 staining. Apoptosis was determined by the ATPLite assay after overnight incubation with soluble TRAIL (open circles) or TRA-8 (closed circles) as shown in a, b′ and d.

Figure 3a′ T cell line U937 was incubated with TRA-8 or murine IgG1 isotype control antibody. Apoptosis was determined by the ATPLite assay after overnight incubation with soluble TRAIL (open circles) or TRA-8 (closed circles).

Figure 3 Glioma (b) and prostate cancer (c) cell lines were incubated with TRA-8 or murine IgG1 isotype control antibody. Apoptosis was determined by the ATPLite assay after overnight incubation with soluble TRAIL (open circles) or TRA-8 (closed circles)

Figure 4 is a series of graphs showing cell viability for human Jurkat cells after exposure to indicated concentrations of (A) antibody strains TRA-1, -8 and -10 and (B) TRAIL in the presence of a fixed concentration of the inventive antibody strains depicted in Figure 4A;

Figure 5. Expression of DR5 in normal and cancer tissues: Normal and cancer tissue homogenates were probed with TRA-8 and developed by chemiluminescence. (a.) Western blot analysis of DR5 protein in normal tissues: lane 1: liver, lane 2: brain, lane 3: lung, lane 4: kidney, lane 5: spleen, lane 6: testes.

Lane 7: ovary, lane 8: heart, lane 9: pancreas. b. Western blot analysis of DR5 protein in cancer tissues. The cancer tissue blot containing cancers from the ovary (lane 1), lung (lane 2), liver (lane 3), rectum (lane 4), cervix (lane 5), skin (lane 6), testes (lane 7), thyroid (lane 8), uterus (lane 10), stomach (lane 11), laryngopharynx (lane 12), and pancreas (lane 13) was probed. *In situ* immunohistochemistry of normal human tissues(c.) and of cancer tissues (d.). Frozen sections were immunostained with TRA-8.

Figure 6. Tumoricidal activity of TRA-8. SCID mice were inoculated subcutaneously with 1321N1 cells. Mice were injected intravenously with a single dose of 100 μg TRA-8 on the second day after tumor inoculation (a.), or with three doses of 100 μg TRA-8 beginning 7 days after tumor inoculation (b) Tumor growth was determined by the weight and examined histologically with H&E staining. The photographs show viable tumor growth in control mice but not in TRA-8 treated mice (c., upper panel), and H&E staining of tumor (c., lower panel). SCID mice were injected intravenously with 10^6 Jurkat cells and treated with a single dose of TRA-8 on the second day after injection. Seven days later, spleen cells were harvested, stained with anti-human CD3 antibody and analyzed by flow cytometry (d.), or by immunohistochemistry (e).

Figure 7 shows expression of cell surface DR5 in RA (A) and OA (B) synovial cells. 1 X 10^6 primary cultured synovial cells were stained with affinity-purified TRA-8 and followed by PE-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG1 antibody. 10,000 viable cells analyzed by FACSvantage.

Figure 8 is a series of graphs showing cell viability as a function of TRAIL and TRA-8 concentration induced apoptosis of representative strains of RA (A) and OA (B) synovial cells with various concentrations of the recombinant soluble TRAIL (the open circles) or affinity-purified TRA-8 (the closed circles). Cell viability is the percentage of the cpm of treated cells versus the cpm of untreated cells.

Figure 9 is a series of graphs showing the caspase dependence of DR5-mediated apoptosis of RA synovial cells. RA synovial cells (RA512) are incubated with 50 ng/ml of soluble Fas ligand (open squares), anti-Fas antibody (CH-11) (closed squares), soluble TRAIL (open circles), or anti-DR5 antibody (TRA-8) (closed circles) in the presence of variable concentrations of caspase inhibitors. After overnight culture, cell viability is determined by ATPLite.

Figure 10A is an electrophoretic gel-shift assay indicating NFkb activation. RA1016 cells are incubated with 20 ng/ml TNF-a, 50 ng/ml soluble TRAIL or 50 ng/ml TRA-8 for indicated time points before being subjected to electrophoresis. Figures 10B and C are graphs showing the production of MMP-1 and MMP-3. 1 X 10^6/ml of indicated RA synovial cells are incubated with the indicated concentrations of TNF-a (the open circles), TRAIL (the open triangles) or TRA-8 (the closed circle). After overnight culture, the culture supernatants are collected. The levels of MMPs in culture supernatants are determined by ELISA.

Figure 11. TRA-8 does not induce hepatocellular toxicity. (a.) Normal liver tissues do not express DR5. The paraffin sections of two normal liver tissues, one hepatocellular carcinoma tissue, and the cytospin preparation of HepG2 cells were prepared for H&E staining, and corresponding frozen sections were stained with TRA-8. (b.) Flow cytometry analysis of cell surface expression of DR5. Hepatocytes, isolated from two normal liver tissues and from a case of hepatocellular carcinoma tissue, and HepG2 cells were stained with TRA-8, anti-Fas antibody (DX2) or an isotype control antibody. The solid histograms indicate TRA-8 or DX2 staining, and the open histograms are the corresponding isotype controls.

Figure 12. TRAIL but not TRA-8 induces hepatocellular toxicity. Fresh normal human hepatocytes were maintained in Hepatocyte Culture Medium. (a.) Apoptosis of hepatocytes was induced with 1 μg/ml soluble TRAIL plus crosslinker or TRA-8 for the indicated time points. Cell viability was determined by ATPLite. The results are presented as percent viable cells compared to the medium control. The shaded bars indicate TRAIL and the black bars indicate TRA-8. (b.) The

condensed nuclei of hepatocytes were stained with Hoechst 33352 and analyzed by flow cytometry. (c.) Effect of cycloheximide on hepatocytes apoptosis. Hepatocytes were cultured in control medium or with 1 μg/ml TRAIL or TRA-8 in the presence (closed bars) or absence (open bars) of 1 μg/ml cycloheximide for 8 hours. Cell viability was determined by ATPLite. The results are presented as mean±SEM of triplicate cultures of two experiments. d. A comparison of the susceptibility of normal hepatocytes to DR5 and Fas-mediated apoptosis. Freshly isolated hepatocytes were incubated with indicated concentrations of soluble TRAIL, TRA-8, soluble FasL or the anti-Fas mAb CH11 for 6 hours. Cell viability was determined by ATPLite assay. The results are presented as the percentage of viable cells compared to medium control. For normal hepatocytes, the mean ± SEM of four normal individuals is presented. The results of hepatocellular carcinoma cells from one patient and HepG2 cells are presented as the average of triplicate cultures.

Figure 13. TRAIL induces hepatitis. B6 mice were intravenously inoculated with 10^9 pfu of adenoviral vector encoding the full length of human TRAIL under the control of the "Tet-on" transcriptional element. TRAIL expression was induced by the indicated dose of tetracycline. (a.) Northern blot analysis of human TRAIL expression in the liver. 24 hours after inoculation of vector and induction with tetracycline, total RNA was isolated from the livers and probed with human TRAIL cDNA or β-actin. (b.) Serum levels of AST. 24 hours after transduction of TRAIL, serum levels of AST were determined. (c.) TRAIL-mediated cell death of adenoviral vector infected hepatocytes: B6 mice were intravenously inoculated with tetracycline-inducible adenoviral vector. 48 hours after inoculation, hepatocytes from inoculated and non-inoculated control mice were isolated and incubated with indicated concentrations of TRAIL for 8 hours (left panel). Cell viability of hepatocytes was determined by the ATPLite assay. Mice, inoculated with adenoviral vector as above, were intravenously injected with 10 μg of soluble human TRAIL 48 hours later. Serum levels of AST were measured at 24 hours after

TRAIL injection (right panel). (d. and e.) Histology analysis of liver damage induced by TRAIL. The livers were collected at 24 hours (d.) or 7 days (e.) after transduction with TRAIL. The paraffin sections were H&E stained, and photographed at 100X (top panel) and 400X (lower panel).

Figure 14 is a series of graphs showing that activated T cells and B cells purified from human PBMC express increased levels of DR5 as determined by flow cytometry for resting (unfilled) and activated (shaded) cells.

Figure 15 is viability graphs as a function of TRA-8 concentration for the purified T cells and B cells depicted in Figure 14 that have been stimulated for 48 hours with anti-CD3 or anti-μ, with activated and blast cells collected by different density of Ficoll-Paque. Viability is determined by ATPLite assay.

Figure 16 is a histogram and flow cytometry plots showing CD3 expression in a gated lymphocyte population for NK cell depleted NOD/SCID mice injected with human PBMC and TRA-8 or IgG (control).

Figure 17 shows CD3 and TUNEL stained cellular micrographs for mouse spleen tissue as detailed in Example 13.

Figure 18 shows cycotoxicity plots for chronic lympholytic leukemia (CCL) and normal B cell humans in the presence of TRA-8, BISVIII, and the combination thereof.

Figure 19(a). Specific binding of 2E12 to DR4. ELISA plates were coated with the soluble form of human TRAIL receptor-human IgG1 Fc fusion proteins as indicated and incubated with indicated concentration of mAb 2E12, followed by HRP-conjugated anti-mouse IgG1. The reaction was developed with TMB substrate buffer and OD values were measured at 450/650nM.

Figure 19(b). 2E12 binds cell surface DR4. Cos-7 cells were transfected with the vector containing the full length cDNA for DR4 (solid histogram) or control vector (open histogram). The transfected cells were stained with 10μg/ml 2E12 and PE-conjugated anti-mouse IgG1. Cells were analyzed by flow cytometry.

Figure 19(c). Apoptosis-inducing activity of 2E12. Human Ramos B lymphoma cells were incubated overnight with the indicated concentrations of 2E12 in the presence of 2μg/ml of anti-mouse IgG1. Cell viability was determined by the ATPLite assay. (d) Caspase activation induced by 2E12. Ramos cells were treated with 2E12 and anti-mouse IgG antibody for the indicated time points. Caspase activation and PARP cleavage were determined by Western blot analysis using specific anti-caspase or PARP antibodies.

Figure 20. The effect of 2E12 and adriamycin in athymic nude mice bearing breast cancer xenografts. 2LMP cells ($3X10^7$) were injected subcutaneously into athymic nude mice on day 0. Two groups of mice were injected intraperitoneally with 200 μg 2E12 on days 7, 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24. Two groups of mice received *i.v.* adriamycin (6mg/kg) on days 8, 12, and 16. One group of mice received no antibody. Data are expressed as the average change in tumor size relative to size on day 7 (n=8 mice/group).

Figure 21. The effect of TRA-8, 2E12 and adriamycin in athymic nude mice bearing breast cancer xenografts. 2LMP cells ($3X10^7$) were injected *s.c.* into athymic nude mice on day 0. Two groups of mice were injected *i.p.* with 200 μg TRA-8 and 2E12 on days 7, 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24. Two groups of mice received *i.v.* adriamycin (6mg/kg) on days 8, 12, and 16. One group of mice received no antibody. Data are expressed as the average change in tumor size relative to size on day 7 (n=8 mice/group).

Figure 22A shows flow cytometry analysis of DR5 cell surface expression in a panel of human breast cancer cell lines. Thick histograms indicate TRA-8 staining and thin histograms indicate incubation with mouse IgG1 isotype control antibody. Figure 22B shows the cytotoxicity of TRA-8 to human breast cancer cell lines.

Figure 23A shows the cytotoxicity of TRA-8 and adriamycin combination treatment on human breast cancer cell lines. Figure 22B shows the cytotoxicity of TRA-8 and paclitaxel combination treatment of human breast cancer cell lines.

Figure 24 shows the effect of TRA-8 on tumor growth in athymic nude mice bearing established 2LMP human breast cancer xenografts. 2LMP cells ($3x10^7$) were injected *s.c.* on day 0. Two groups of mice were injected *i.p.* with 200 μg or 600 μg TRA-8 on days 7, 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24. One group of mice received no antibody. The data represent the average change in tumor size (product of two diameters) relative to size on day 7.

Figure 25 shows the effect of TRA-8 and adriamycin on tumor growth in athymic nude mice bearing breast cancer xenografts. 2LMP cells ($3x10^7$) were injected *s.c.* into athymic nude mice on day 0. Two groups of mice were injected TRA-8 on days 7, 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24. Two groups of mice received adriamycin on days 8, 12, and 16. One group of mice received no antibody. Data are expressed as the average change in tumor size (product of two diameters) relative to size on day 7.

Figure 26 shows the effect of TRA-8 and paclitaxel in athymic nude mice bearing breast cancer xenografts. 2LMP cells ($3x10^7$) were injected *s.c.* into athymic nude mice on day 0. Two groups of mice were injected with 200 μg TRA-8 on days 7, 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24. Two groups of mice received paclitaxel on days 8, 12, 16, 20, and 24. One group of mice received no antibody. Data are expressed as the average change in tumor size (product of two diameters) relative to size on day 7.

Figure 27 shows the effect of TRA-8, adriamycin, and ^{60}Co radiation on tumor growth in athymic nude mice bearing breast cancer xenografts. 2LMP cells ($3x10^7$) were injected into athymic nude mice on day 0. Three groups of mice were injected with 200 μg TRA-8 on days 7, 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24. Two groups of mice received adriamycin on days 8, 12, and 16. Four groups of mice received 3 Gy ^{60}Co radiation on days 9 and 17. One group of mice received no antibody. Data are expressed as the average change in tumor size (product of two diameters) relative to size on day 7.

Detailed Description of the Invention

The failure to delete cells is due to defects in the apoptosis inducing system which are associated with defects illustratively including expression or function of the ligand, the receptor, or the intracellular regulatory and effector molecules. The present invention affords a method to correct a deficient apoptosis inducing system as well as to elucidate the specific defects inherent in a given defective apoptosis inducing system.

The present invention relates to a new class of monoclonal antibodies that have selective *in vivo* and *in vitro* apoptosis inducing activity against specific TRAIL receptors, including DR5, DR4, DcR1 and DcR2. Thus, the antibodies of the present invention specifically bind one of the TRAIL receptors. By "selectively binding" or "specifically recognizing" means that the antibody binds only one TRAIL receptor and shows little or no binding to other types of TRAIL receptors using traditional Western blot analysis. A DR5 antibody of the present invention binds DR5 selectively and shows no binding above about 1.5 times background for DR4, DcR1 or DcR2. Similarly, a DR4 antibody of the present invention binds DR4 selectively and shows no binding above about 1.5 times background for DR5, DcR1 or DcR2. The present invention has utility as a reagent for apoptosis signaling research, as well as utility as a therapeutic effective against cells expressing TRAIL receptors, illustratively including broad classes of cancer cells, cells showing disregulation of the apoptosis system, activated lymphocytes or other activated immune cells (e.g., lymphoid cells and myeloid cells), virally infected cells, and abnormally proliferating synovial cells (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis synovial cells, including inflammatory synovial cells, activated lymphoid and myeloid cells in the synovium, macrophage-like synoviocytes, and fibroblast-like synoviocytes) of autoimmune diseases. Antibodies according to the present invention are specific in binding particular types of TRAIL receptors in spite of the homology there between. The inventive antibodies afford targeted apoptosis of only those cells expressing a target TRAIL receptor or alternatively, blocking TRAIL apoptosis of cells expressing a target receptor.

A DR5 monoclonal antibody or a DR4 monoclonal antibody of the present invention serves as a potent inducer of apoptosis in cells expressing DR5 or DR4, respectively, *in vitro* and as a potent inducer of apoptosis *in vivo*. Humanized fragmentary CDR sequences engrafted on humanized antibody backbones and fusion protein DR5 or DR4 antibodies of the present invention exhibit similar apoptotic properties.

To date, no monoclonal antibody is available which binds to cell surface DR5 and which, even at low concentrations, induces apoptosis of cells expressing DR5 both *in vitro* and *in vivo* in the absence of a crosslinker. The present invention includes a DR5 antibody operative as a therapeutic agent in the treatment of a variety of diseases. Although soluble TRAIL has been shown to be effective in induction of apoptosis of tumor cells *in vivo*, the killing activity appeared to be very low with the large and repeated doses often being required (13). The present invention provides a purified antibody which binds a TRAIL receptor DR5, wherein said antibody, in its soluble form at low concentrations, has in vivo and in vitro apoptosis-inducing activity in target cells expressing DR5. In a preferred embodiment, the purified antibody binds the TRAIL receptor DR5 in the absence of antibody crosslinking. Preferably, the antibody does not induce significant apoptosis of normal fibroblast cells. Preferably, the apoptosis-inducing activity is characterized by less than 60%, 50%, 40%, 30%, 20%, 10%, 5% viability, or any percentage in between, of the target cells at antibody concentrations of less than about 0.1, 1, 5, 10, or 20 μg/ml or any concentration in between. The purified antibody specifically binds TRAIL receptor DR5 and does not bind TRAIL receptors DR4, DcR1, or DcR2 upon routine Western blot analysis. In a preferred embodiment, the antibody is a monoclonal antibody, preferably having the same epitope specificity as mouse-mouse hybridoma TRA-8 having ATCC Accession Number PTA-1428.

TRA-8, one of a series of DR5 antibodies according to the present invention, is pharmaceutically effective in animals carrying a human DR5 transgene and also has utility in establishing a model for the investigation of the role of DR5 and TRAIL.

Various embodiments of the invention provide antibodies that induce apoptosis in the presence or absence of crosslinking. For example, a preferred embodiment of DR5 antibody (e.g., TRA-8) induces apoptosis in the absence of crosslinking. "Crosslinking" includes, for example, crosslinking by a secondary

antibody. Other embodiments provide antibodies that induce apoptosis in the presence of crosslinkers, including, for example, a preferred embodiment of the DR4 antibody (2E12).

Thus, the invention provides a purified antibody which specifically binds a TRAIL receptor DR4, wherein said antibody, in its soluble form, has in vivo and in vitro apoptosis-inducing activity in target cells expressing DR4. As one embodiment, the antibody is a monoclonal antibody having the same epitope specificity as hybridoma 2E12 having ATCC Accession Number PTA-3798, deposited on October 24, 2001, having designated name "2E12 Hybridoma Clone Against Human DR4," on behalf of The UAB Research Foundation. 2E12, one of a series of DR4 antibodies of the present invention, is pharmaceutically active in reducing tumor size, as compared to untreated control animals or compared to the tumor size before treatment, *in vivo* in animals with DR4 expressing cancers.

Antibodies to DR5 are effective in soluble form at low doses, by low doses is meant at doses or concentrations of less than about 0.01 to about 1 μg/ml *in vitro* and less than about 1-10 mg/kg *in vivo*. A preferred feature of the antibodies of the present invention is that they induce apoptosis selectively to cells expressing DR5 receptors, without inducing apoptosis in normal, non-activated, non-transformed hepatocytes, fibrocytes, synoviocytes, etc. An antibody according to the present invention raised against a TRAIL receptor is harvested according to the present invention from an experimental animal but can be made by any methods of antibody production or synthesis known in the art. By humanizing the antibody according to the present invention to maintain receptor binding activity while eliciting a diminished and therapeutically tolerable immune response within a human subject, a humanized anti-TRAIL receptor antibody according to the present invention is used as therapeutic agonist or antagonist for a given TRAIL receptor. The present invention being operative as an *in vivo* therapeutic since secondary crosslinking of the anti-TRAIL receptor antibody, optionally, is not required.

The present invention extends beyond a single anti-TRAIL receptor antibody having agonist or antagonistic apoptotic effects. Rather, two or more anti-TRAIL receptor antibodies are brought into contact with a cell culture *in vitro* or a subject body tissue *in vivo* to create an enhanced treatment. By "enhanced treatment" is meant any additive, synergistic, or potentiating effect. For example, glioma cell line U87 and hematopoietic cell lines U937 and Molt-4 are responsive to exposure to a synergistic exposure to agonistic anti-DR4 and anti-DR5 antibodies whereas exposure to agonisticDR5 antibody alone shows only limited success in inducing apoptosis.

Additionally, antagonistic anti-TRAIL receptor antibodies have particular utility in the present invention when an antibody is specific to binding one of the decoy receptors DcR1, DcR2 or OPG. Selective blocking of a decoy receptor with an antibody according to the present invention has the effect in cell types expressing decoy receptors of shifting the TRAIL binding equilibrium towards those TRAIL receptors capable of transducing the apoptosis signal. Thus, in another combined therapy according to the present invention, a decoy receptor binding antibody sensitizes an expressing cell towards agonistic apoptosis signal transducing TRAIL receptor binding.

In another embodiment, the present invention affords a method of elucidating agonistic and antagonistic epitopes of a given TRAIL receptor. Further, polymorphisms between individuals associated with a given TRAIL receptor are elucidated according to the present invention through the use of a panel of monoclonal antibodies each having a differing variable or CDR region. A characterized panel of monoclonal antibodies provides the ability to define agonistic and antagonistic epitopes and polymorphisms. Thus, a panel of monoclonal antibodies according to the present invention has utility in drug discovery and/or subject screening for disease proclivity.

Still another embodiment of the present invention involves fusion proteins including an antigenic fragment of a TRAIL receptor coupled to an immunoglobulin

protein, polypeptide or fragment thereof. A TRAIL receptor fragment being defined as containing a sufficient number of bases to elicit an immunogenic response to a native TRAIL receptor expressed on a subject cell surface. A TRAIL receptor fusion fragment including at least ten amino acids. An immunoglobulin fusion protein or fragment thereof is defined herein to include a native or synthetic protein or polypeptide segment having a sufficient number of amino acid bases to activate an immunogenic cascade response within a subject. An immunogen of the present invention including a fusion of a TRAIL receptor fragment coupled to an immunoglobin fragment has utility as an *in vivo* therapeutic to elicit an anti-TRAIL receptor antibody in situ within a subject.

In still a further embodiment, the present invention is operative as a gene therapy. The invention thus provides a method of selectively inducing apoptosis in target cells comprising the steps of transfecting the target cells with a vector comprising an expressible TRAIL receptor nucleic acid sequence; expressing on said cells a TRAIL receptor encoded by said TRAIL receptor nucleic acid sequence; and contacting said cells with an apoptosis-inducing antibody selective for binding said TRAIL receptor. In a gene therapy aspect of the present invention, targeted cells are transfected with a vector carrying an expressible sequence corresponding to a TRAIL receptor, the vector being conventional and chosen on the basis of the targeted cell susceptibility to the vector. Gene therapy vectors illustratively include adenovirus, pAdCMV5. Upon the targeted cells or tissue expressing the transfected TRAIL receptor, the cells or tissue are exposed to an antibody according to the present invention specific for binding the transfected TRAIL receptor. It is appreciated that the anti-TRAIL receptor antibody is either agonistic or antagonistic thereto consistent with the desired therapeutic result.

The antibodies of the present invention are also operative in conjunction with a sensitizer. A sensitizer as used herein is defined to include any stimulus that induces apoptosis, including ultraviolet light, organic molecules specifically including the class of bisindolmaleimides, heavy metals and free radical species.

In the context of cancer therapy, TRA-8, is able to induce apoptosis of most TRAIL-sensitive tumor cells in a caspase-dependent fashion in the absence of the secondary crosslinking. TRA-8 or 2E12, alone or in combination with other antibodies, exhibits a strong tumoricidal activity *in vivo*. The ability of TRA-8 or 2E12 to induce apoptosis of most TRAIL-sensitive cells confirms that either DR5 or DR4 alone is sufficient to trigger apoptosis. The majority of tumor cells detailed herein express cell surface DR5 and their susceptibility to TRA-8 induced cell death paralleled their susceptibility to TRAIL, indicating that DR5 is a primary death receptor for TRAIL-mediated apoptosis in most tumor cells. Similar results were obtained with antibodies specific for DR4 (e.g., 2E12). Thus, differential expression of DR5 or DR4 by normal and cancer cells is operative in the selectivity of TRAIL-mediated apoptosis. TRA-8 bypasses the decoy receptors to induce TRAIL-mediated apoptosis. Only a minority of TRAIL resistant tumor cells are sensitive to TRA-8, however, indicating that the decoy receptors do not appear to play a major role in the resistance of tumor cells to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis.

Although previous studies have indicated that systemic administration of the soluble form of TRAIL in animals does induce tumor regression without causing toxicity[3,4,22], the membrane-bound form of human TRAIL induces liver damage in mice as shown herein. However, the hepatic toxicity of TRAIL is much less potent than that of Fas ligand as demonstrated by the lesser susceptibility of normal hepatocytes to TRAIL-induced injury compared to Fas ligand and by the lack of lethality of TRAIL *in vivo*. Thus, titration of TRAIL has utility in cancer therapy.

As detailed herein, the absence of significant levels of DR5 protein expression by normal hepatocytes is shown and is associated with hepatocyte resistance to TRA-8 induced apoptosis. Crosslinking of DR5 with monoclonal antibody is insufficient to organize the homopolymeric forms of the death receptor able to trigger apoptosis. Experiments in marmoset indicate no evidence of hepatic toxicity of TRA-8 administration. Thus, an agonistic monoclonal DR5 antibody is likely to be more selective and safer than soluble TRAIL as a therapeutic agent.

Similarly, DR4 is expressed by transformed or activated cells and is not expressed in appreciable amounts or only at much lower amounts by normal cells, e.g., fibroblasts. DR4 of the present invention thereof induces apoptosis of certain target cells without appreciable cell death in non-target cells, like fibroblasts, etc. As used herein the absence of an effect or the lack of an appreciable or significant effect refers to and includes the complete absence of the effect or an effect that is less than or equal to background or control levels and does not exceed background and control levels by more than 1.5 times the background or control level.

As a screening assay or imaging tool, the present invention is well suited for detecting small clusters of DR4 or DR5 cells which may still exhibit normal cell morphology. For example, *in situ* cell section staining of human cancer cells including lung, prostate and liver cancers with labeled antibodies according to the present invention readily identifies cancerous cells. The antibodies of the present invention are also useful in screening for other disease manifestations, including, for example, various inflammatory and autoimmune diseases, like rheumatoid arthritis. Such screening may be useful even before the onset of other clinical symptoms and could be used to screening subjects at risk for disease, so that prophylactic treatment can be started before the manifestation of other signs or symptoms. Specifically, cancer cells are observed to express very high levels of DR5 as compared to normal cells of the same type. Thus, the present invention has utility as a sensitive screening method for early stage malignancies within tissue including at least lung, prostate, colon, blood, cervix, breast, and liver. A therapeutic process is detailed herein for the inhibition of abnormal cell proliferation associated with diseases illustratively malignant cancers and lymphatic leukemias among others.

The present invention is detailed herein with particularity to an anti-human DR5 monoclonal antibody designated as TRA-8, having ATCC Accession Number PTA-1428. It is appreciated that the techniques and results detailed with regard to the agonistic anti-human DR5 monoclonal antibody TRA-8 are wholly extendable and applicable to antagonistic DR5 antibodies, as well as antibodies raised against

DR4, DcR1 and DcR2 acting in both agonistic and antagonistic manners. Thus, the present invention is detailed herein with respect to an apoptosis-inducing antibody specific for human DR4. In one embodiment, the antibody has the same epitope specificity as hybridoma 2E12, which was deposited on October 24, 2001, to procure an accession number on behalf of The UAB Research Foundation, with the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Md. The description of the deposited material was "2E12 Hybridoma Clone Against Human DR4," with the strain designation 2E12 and the reference docket number as PCT/US01/14151. The levels of expression of an apoptosis receptor, such as Fas, do not necessarily correlate with the susceptibility of the cells to apoptosis. For TRAIL-mediated apoptosis, it has been suggested that the expression of the decoy receptors for TRAIL influences the susceptibility of the cells. Moreover, it has been suggested that DR5 must be associated with DR4 for effective transduction of the apoptosis signal through FADD and the caspase 8 pathway. The availability of agonistic monoclonal anti-DR5 antibody allowed evaluation of the regulation of DR5 signaling and its relative role in TRAIL-mediated apoptosis. Comparison of the susceptibility of the cells to TRA-8-mediated apoptosis with their susceptibility to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis offers insight into the role of DR5 in TRAIL-mediated apoptosis and the mechanisms that may affect susceptibility. Similar advantages are provided by the DR4 antibody.

This advantage generally extends to humanized DR5 and DR4 antibodies of the present invention. A molecular clone of an antibody to DR-5, for example, is prepared by known techniques as detailed with respect to the following Examples. Recombinant DNA methodology (33) is operative herein to construct nucleic acid sequences which encode a monoclonal antibody molecule or antigen binding region thereof.

The present invention allows the construction of humanized TRAIL receptor antibodies that are unlikely to induce a human anti-mouse antibody (hereinafter referred to as "HAMA") response (34), while still having an effective antibody effector function. Fully human antibodies can also be made by immunizing mice

capable of making a fully human antibody (e.g., mice genetically modified to produce human antibodies), screening clones that bind DR5 or DR4, induce apoptosis, and compete for TRA-8 or 2E12 epitope. See, e.g., Lonberg and Huszar (1995) Human antibodies from transgenic mice, Int. Rev. Immunol. 13:65-93, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety for methods of producing fully human antibodies. As used herein, the terms "human" and "humanized," in relation to antibodies, relate to any antibody which is expected to elicit a therapeutically tolerable weak immunogenic response in a human subject.

The present invention provides for a DR5 antibody, a humanized anti-DR5 antibody, TRA-8 heavy and light chain immunoglobulins and humanized heavy and light chain immunoglobulins. The invention also provides a DR4 antibody, a humanized DR4 antibody, heavy and light chain immunoglobulins of the DR4 antibody and humanized heavy and light chain immunoglobulins, nucleic acids that encode the antibodies and heavy and light chains, vectors comprising those nucleic acids, and cells comprising the vectors. Certain truncations of these proteins or genes perform the regulatory or enzymatic functions of the full sequence protein or gene. For example, the nucleic acid sequences coding therefor can be altered by substitutions, additions, deletions or multimeric expression that provide for functionally equivalent proteins or genes. Due to the degeneracy of nucleic acid coding sequences, other sequences which encode substantially the same amino acid sequences as those of the naturally occurring proteins may be used in the practice of the present invention. These include, but are not limited to, nucleic acid sequences including all or portions of the nucleic acid sequences encoding the above polypeptides, which are altered by the substitution of different codons that encode a functionally equivalent amino acid residue within the sequence, thus producing a silent change. It is appreciated that the nucleotide sequence of an immunoglobin according to the present invention tolerates sequence homology variations of up to 25% as calculated by standard methods ("Current Methods in Sequence Comparison and Analysis," *Macromolecule* Sequencing and Synthesis, Selected Methods and

Applications, pp. 127-149, 1998, Alan R. Liss, Inc.) so long as such a variant forms an operative antibody which recognizes a TRAIL receptor DR5. For example, one or more amino acid residues within a polypeptide sequence can be substituted by another amino acid of a similar polarity which acts as a functional equivalent, resulting in a silent alteration. Substitutes for an amino acid within the sequence may be selected from other members of the class to which the amino acid belongs (i.e., a conservative substitution). For example, the nonpolar (hydrophobic) amino acids include alanine, leucine, isoleucine, valine, proline, phenylalanine, tryptophan and methionine. The polar neutral amino acids include glycine, serine, threonine, cysteine, tyrosine, asparagine, and glutamine. The positively charged (basic) amino acids include arginine, lysine and histidine. The negatively charged (acidic) amino acids include aspartic acid and glutamic acid. Also included within the scope of the present invention are proteins or fragments or derivatives thereof which are differentially modified during or after translation, e.g., by glycosylation, proteolytic cleavage, linkage to an antibody molecule or other cellular ligands, etc. In addition, the recombinant vector encoding nucleic acid sequences of the antibodies of the present invention may be engineered so as to modify processing or expression of a vector. Other modifications can be made in either the nucleic acid or amino acid sequence without reducing or without substantially reducing apoptosis activity in the antibody. Such modifications can occur in the CDRs or non-CDR regions using techniques routine in the art. See, e.g., Yang et al. (1995), J. Mol. Biol. 254:392-403, which is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety for methods of CDR walking mutagenesis.

Additionally, an inhibitor encoding nucleic acid sequence can be mutated *in vitro* or *in vivo* to create and/or destroy translation, initiation, and/or termination sequences or to create variations in coding regions and/or form new restriction endonuclease sites or destroy pre-existing ones, to facilitate further *in vitro* modification. Any technique for mutagenesis known in the art can be used,

including but not limited to *in vitro* site directed mutagenesis, *J. Biol. Chem.* 253:6551, use of Tab linkers (Pharmacia), and the like.

X-ray crystallography data indicate that the antibody immunoglobulin fold generally forms a long cylindrical structure comprising two layers of antiparallel b-sheets, each consisting of three or four b-chains. In a variable region, three loops from each of the V domains of H and L chains cluster together to form an antigen-binding site. Each of these loops is termed a complementarity determining region (CDR). The CDRs have the highest variability in amino acid sequence with the antibody. The portions of the variable region that are not part of a CDR are called "framework regions" ("FR" regions) and generally play a role in maintaining CDR structure. Preferably, all the CDRs from a given antibody are grafted into an acceptor antibody, in order to preserve the binding region for the TRAIL receptor epitope region. It is appreciated that grafting a portion of the total amount of CDRs into a donor is operative herein. It is understood that grafting generally entails the replacement, residue for residue, of one amino acid or region, for another. However, occasionally, especially with the transfer of a region, one or more residues may be added or omitted or substituted therefor, as desired, and that such deletions and insertions, as well as appropriate replacements and inversions, are within the skill of those in the art.

An antibody of the present invention is obtained by, for example, grafting each CDR of L chain and H chain subunit of an anti-TRAIL receptor monoclonal antibody into a corresponding CDR region of a human antibody, thereby humanizing a mouse monoclonal antibody effective against a TRAIL-receptor.

Antibody fragments which contain the idiotype of the molecule are also generated and operative herein using known techniques. For example, such fragments illustratively include the anti-TRAIL receptor (AB')2 fragment which can be produced by pepsin digestion of the antibody molecule, the TRAIL receptor antibody AB' fragments generated through reduction of the disulfide bridges of the

TRAIL receptor (AB')2 fragment, and the antibody fragment which are generated by treating the antibody molecule with papain and a reducing agent.

The antibodies of the present invention can be made using numerous techniques known in the art. By way of example, the anti-DR5 monoclonal antibody TRA-8 may be obtained by culturing a hybridoma which, in turn, may be obtained by immunizing a mouse with human DR5 and subsequently fusing the spleen cells or lymph node cells from the mouse with mouse myeloma cells.

Preparation of a monoclonal antibody illustratively involves the following steps:

a) purification of a biomacromolecule for use as an antigen;

b) preparation of antibody producing cells, after first immunizing an animal using injections of the antigen, bleeding the animal and assaying the antibody titer, in order to determine when to remove the spleen;

c) preparation of myeloma cells;

d) fusing the antibody producing cells and myeloma cells;

e) selecting a hybridoma producing a desired antibody;

f) preparing a single cell clone (cloning);

g) optionally, culturing the hybridoma cells, or growing animals into which the hybridoma cells have been transplanted, for large scale preparation of the monoclonal antibody; and

h) testing the biological activities and the specificity, or assaying marker agent properties, of the monoclonal antibody thus prepared.

The procedure for the preparation of a monoclonal antibody is detailed below with reference to the above-described steps. This method for preparing an antibody of the present invention is intended only to be illustrative of the methods of preparation and is not limited thereto. Other known procedures may be followed, or the following method modified, for instance by using antibody producing cells other than spleen cells and myeloma.

(a) Preparation of antigen

A recombinant protein (hereinafter referred to as "recombinant human DR5" or "recombinant human DR4"), effective as the antigen, is obtained by transfecting QBI-293A cells with the expression vector pAdDR5-IgG for a fusion protein comprising the extracellular domain of human DR5 or DR4 and the Fc region of human IgG1 antibody (hereinafter referred to as "IgG"), (cf. PTA-1428) to express it by using the ADENO-Quest kit (Quantum Biotechnologies Inc., Canada), and collecting and partially purifying the expression product. The plasmid pAdDR5-IgG is constructed by inserting DNA encoding a human DR5 or DR4 and human IgG fusion protein into pAdCMV5, which is an expression vector for animal cells. Other materials, such as the DNA encoding DR5 or DR4, the vector, and the host, are operative herein.

The human DR5 or DR4 and IgG fusion protein produced in the culture supernatant of the QBI-293A cells transfected with the vector pAdDR5-IgG may be partially purified by ProteinA-Sepharose affinity chromatography or ProteinG-Sepharose affinity chromatography, or ion-exchange chromatography using a Resource Q column (trade name; Pharmacia).

Alternatively, purified DR5 or DR4 obtained from the cell membranes of human cell lines is used as the antigen. Further, since the primary structures of DR4 and DR5 are known (cf. PTA-1428), a peptide comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO. 1, may be chemically synthesized by a known method such as the Sanger method, and used as the antigen.

(b) Preparation of antibody producing cells

A mouse is immunized with the immunogen produced in step (a), mixed with an adjuvant, such as Freund's complete or incomplete adjuvant or alum. Other suitable experimental animals illustratively include rats, guinea pigs, rabbits, dogs, chickens, horses, pigs, cows and sheep.

Suitable administration routes to immunize an experimental animal include the subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, intravenous, intradermal, and intramuscular injection routes, with subcutaneous and intraperitoneal injections being preferred.

Immunizations are optionally performed by a single dose or, by several repeated doses at appropriate intervals (preferably 1 to 5 weeks). Immunized animals are monitored for antibody titer in their sera, and an animal with a sufficiently high antibody titer is selected as the source of antibody producing cells. Selecting an animal with a high titer makes the subsequent process more efficient. Cells for the subsequent fusion are generally harvested from the animal 3 to 5 days after the final immunization.

Methods for assaying antibody titer include various well known techniques such as radioimmunoassay (hereinafter, referred to as "RIA"), solid-phase enzyme immunoassay (hereinafter, referred to as "ELISA"), fluorescent antibody assay and passive hemagglutination assay, with RIA and ELISA preferred for reasons of detection sensitivity, rapidity, accuracy and potential for automation.

Determination of antibody titer may be performed, for example, by ELISA, as follows. First, purified or partially purified DR5 or DR4 is adsorbed onto the surface of a solid phase, such as a 96-well ELISA plate, followed by blocking any remaining surface, to which DR5 or DR4 has not been bound, with a protein unrelated to the antigen, such as bovine serum albumin (BSA). After washing, the well surfaces are contacted with serially diluted samples of mouse sera to enable binding of the DR5 or DR4 antibody in the samples to the antigen. A labeled, anti-mouse antibody, as the secondary antibody, is added to be bound to the mouse antibody. The label can include an enzymatic label, a fluorescent label or other labels known in the art. After washing, the enzyme substrate is added, and antibody titer is estimated by determining absorbance change due to color development caused by the alteration of the substrate or the like.

(c) Preparation of myeloma cells

Cells from established mouse cell lines serve as the source of myeloma cells, including for example 8-azaguanine resistant mouse, derived from BALB/c myeloma strains P3X63Ag8U.1 (P3-U1) (35), P3/NSI/1-Ag4-1(NS-1) (36). Sp2/0-Ag14 (SP-2) (37), P3X63Ag8.653 (653) (38) and P3X63Ag8 (X63) (39). The cell line selected is serially transferred into an appropriate medium, such as 8-azaguanine medium. 8-azaguanine medium includes Iscove's Modified Dulbecco's Medium (hereinafter referred to as "IMDM") or Dulbecco's, Modified Eagle Medium (hereinafter referred to as "DMEM"). RPMI-1640 medium supplemented with glutamine, 2-mercaptoethanol, gentamicin, fetal calf serum (hereinafter referred to as "FCS"), and 8-azaguanine. The cells are then transferred to a normal medium, such as ASF104 medium (Ajinomoto, K. K.) containing 10% FCS, 3 to 4 days prior to fusion, in order to ensure that at least 2 x 10^7 cells are available on the day of fusion.

(d) Cell fusion

Lymphocytes and plasma cells obtained from any suitable part of the animal are precursor cells to produce the antibody. Lymphocyte or plasma cell sources illustratively include spleen, lymph nodes, peripheral blood, or any appropriate combination thereof, with spleen cells being the most common source.

After the last booster injection, tissue in which antibody producing cells are present is removed from a mouse having the predetermined antibody titer. The currently favored technique for fusion of spleen cells with myeloma cells prepared in step c), employs polyethylene glycol.

The fusion technique includes washing spleen and myeloma cells with serum-free medium (such as RPMI 1640) or phosphate buffered saline (hereinafter referred to as "PBS") so that the number ratio of spleen cells to myeloma cells is approximately between 5:1 and 10:1, and then centrifuged. After the supernatant has been discarded and the pelleted cells sufficiently loosened, 1 ml of serum-free medium containing 50%(w/v) polyethylene glycol (m.w. 1,000 to 4,000) is added

dropwise with mixing. Subsequently, 10 ml of serum-free medium is slowly added and then centrifuged. The supernatant is discarded again, and the pelleted cells are suspended in an appropriate amount of HAT medium containing a solution of hypoxanthine, aminopterin and thymidine (hereinafter referred to as "HAT") and mouse interleukin-2 (hereinafter referred to as "IL-2"). The suspension is then dispensed into the wells of culture plates (also referred herein simply as "plates") and incubated in the presence of 5% v/v CO_2 at 37°C for about 2 weeks, with the supplementary addition of HAT medium as appropriate.

e) Selection of hybridomas

When the myeloma strain used is resistant to 8-azaguanine, i.e., it is deficient in the hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (HGPRT) enzyme, any unfused myeloma cells and any myeloma-myeloma fusions are unable to survive in HAT medium. On the other hand, fusions of antibody producing cells with each other, as well as hybridomas of antibody producing cells with myeloma cells can survive, the former only having a limited life. Accordingly, continued incubation in HAT medium results in selection of only the desired hybridomas.

The resulting hybridomas grow into colonies that are then transferred into HAT medium lacking aminopterin (HT medium). Thereafter, aliquots of the culture supernatant are removed to determine anti-Fas antibody titer by, for example, ELISA. When the above-mentioned fusion protein is used as the ELISA antigen, it is also necessary to eliminate clones producing an antibody which is specifically bound to the Fc region of human IgG1. The presence or absence of such a clone may be verified, for example, by ELISA using Fas-IgG1or IgG1, as the antigen.

(f) Cloning

Hybridomas which have been shown to produce specific antibodies, using a method similar to that described in step b) to determine antibody titer, are then transferred to another plate for cloning. Suitable cloning methods include: the limiting dilution method, in which hybridomas are diluted to contain one cell per well of a plate and then cultured; the soft agar method in which colonies are

recovered after culturing in soft agar medium; a method of using a micromanipulator to separate a single cell for culture; and "sort-a-clone," in which single cells are separated by a cell sorter.

The cloning procedure according to, for example, the limiting dilution method is repeated 2 to 4 times for each well demonstrating an antibody titer, and clones having stable antibody titers are selected as anti-DR5 monoclonal antibody producing hybridomas. Hybridomas producing an anti mouse DR5 antibody are selected by a similar method to obtain an anti-DR5 monoclonal antibody producing cell line.

The mouse-mouse hybridoma TRA-8 which is a basis for antibodies of the present invention was deposited with American Type Culture Collection on March 1, 2000, and has the accession number PTA-1428. The 2E12 hybridoma was deposited with American Type Culture Collection on October 24, 2001, as described above and has the accession number ATCC No. PTA-3798. Accordingly, when preparing an antibody using the mouse-mouse hybridoma TRA-8 or any other established hybridoma, the preparation may be performed by following a procedure starting from the step (g) below, with the steps (a) to (f) omitted.

(g) Culture of hybridoma to prepare monoclonal antibody

The hybridoma obtained by the cloning is then cultured in normal medium, not in HT medium. Large-scale culture is performed by roller bottle culture, using large culture bottles, or by spinner culture. The supernatant from the large-scale culture is then harvested and purified by a suitable method, such as gel filtration, which is well known to those skilled in the art, to obtain an DR5 or DR4 monoclonal antibody which is a basis for antibodies of the present invention. The hybridoma may also be grown intraperitoneally in a syngeneic mouse, such as a BALB/c mouse or a nu/nu mouse, to obtain ascites containing a DR5 or DR4 monoclonal antibody in large quantities. Commercially available monoclonal antibody purification kits (for example, MAbTrap GII Kit; Pharmacia) are conveniently used to purify the harvested antibodies.

Monoclonal antibodies prepared as above have a high specificity for human DR5 or DR4, respectively.

(h) Assay of monoclonal antibody

Suitable identification methods of the isotype and the subclass of the monoclonal antibody include the Ouchterlony method, ELISA and RIA. Preferably, a commercial kit is used for identification, such as a Mouse Typer Kit (trade name; BioRad).

Quantification of protein may be performed by the Folin-Lowry method, or by calculation based on the absorbance at 280 nm (1.4 (OD280) = Immunoglobulin 1 mg/ml).

Identification of the epitope that the monoclonal antibody recognizes is performed as follows. First, various partial structures of the molecule that the monoclonal antibody recognizes are prepared. The partial structures are prepared by the method wherein various partial peptides of the molecule are synthetically prepared by known oligopeptide synthesis technique, or the method wherein DNA encoding the desired partial polypeptide is incorporated in a suitable expression plasmid, and is expressed in a suitable host, such as *E. coli*, to produce the peptides. Generally, both methods are frequently used in combination for the above object. For example, a series of polypeptides having appropriately reduced lengths, working from the C- or N-terminus of the antigen protein, can be prepared by established genetic engineering techniques. By establishing which fragments react with the antibody, an approximate idea of the epitope site is obtained.

The epitope is more closely identified by synthesizing a variety of smaller oligopeptides corresponding thereto or mutants of the peptide using established oligopeptide synthesis techniques to determine a binding property of the peptides to the anti-DR5 monoclonal antibody, for example, which is a basis for preparation of the antibody of the present invention and a competitive inhibition of binding of the peptide to an antigen with the monoclonal antibody. Commercially available kits, such as the SPOTs Kit (Genosys Biotechnologies, Inc.) and a series of multipin

peptide synthesis kits based on the multipin synthesis method (Chiron Corp.) may be conveniently used to obtain a large variety of oligopeptides.

An antibody of the present invention has the various functional properties a) to f) described below, each of which is verified by, for example, a method described herein below.

a) Specific binding of TRA-8 to cells expressing human DR5.

A unique feature of the present invention is the ability to bind cell surface DR5. This is demonstrated by flow cytometry analysis of cells expressing DR5. First, specific cell surface binding of DR5 is confirmed by the COS-7 cells transfected with the full-length cDNA encoding human DR5. Specifically, TRA-8 only recognizes COS-7 cells transfected with DR5 but not empty control vector or vector encoding DR4. Second, three different origins: hematopoietic, glioma, and prostate cancer of human malignant tumor cells are tested. The majority of these transformed tumor cells expressed significant levels of cell surface DR5, although expression levels varied largely. Third, two panels of human primary synovial fibroblast cells from RA and OA patients are examined. All RA synovial cells expressed significantly higher levels of DR5 compared to OA cells.

b) Induction of apoptosis of human malignant tumor cells *in vitro* in the absence of crosslinking.

The ability of an antibody raised according to the present invention to recognize TRAIL receptor and to directly induce apoptosis of malignant human tumor cells is determined by cell viability assay (ATPLite) during *in vitro* culture of cells with various concentrations of an antibody, specifically TRA-8. The majority of tumor cells are susceptible to TRA-8 induced apoptosis. For some cells, TRA-8 exhibited a strong apoptosis-inducing activity, for example, TRA-8 is able to induce apoptosis of human Jurkat cells within the pg/ml levels. Importantly, TRA-8 induced apoptosis did not require crosslinking, and in most cells, TRA-8 exhibited a stronger apoptosis-inducing activity than the recombinant soluble TRAIL in the presence of the enhancer.

c) Tumoricidal activity of TRA-8 *in vivo*.

Tumoricidal activity of TRA-8 is evaluated in two SCID/human tumor cell models. First, SCID mice are intravenously inoculated with human leukemia Jurkat cells, and treated with a single dose (100 μg) of TRA-8. The results show that the majority of implanted Jurkat cells are eliminated from the peripheral blood and spleen by the treatment with TRA-8, as determined by flow cytometry analysis and in situ immunohistochemical straining of Jurkat cells. Second, human astrocytoma cells, 1321N1, are subcutaneously inoculated in SCID mice, and the tumor-bearing mice are treated with a single dose of TRA-8. The growth of implanted 1321N1 cells is significantly inhibited in TRA-8 treated mice as determined by the sizes of tumor and histological analysis.

d) Identification of RA synovial cells by TRA-8

The primary synovial cells isolated from 8 RA and 4 OA patients are tested for cell surface expression of DR5. TRA-8 is able to positively strain all RA cells but negatively stain all OA cells. Thus, RA is differentiated from OA by the surface expression of DR5 as detected by TRA-8.

e) Induction of apoptosis in RA synovial fibroblast cells by TRA-8

The ability of TRA-8 to induce apoptosis of RA synovial cells is determined by cell viability assay during *in vitro* culture in the presence of various concentrations of TRA-8. All RA cells exhibited high to intermediate levels of susceptibility to 100 ng/ml of TRA-8. In contrast, all OA cells are essentially resistant to TRA-8 induced apoptosis. Importantly, TRA-8 exhibited a better apoptosis-inducing activity to RA synovial cells than soluble TRAIL with the enhancer. Moreover, compared to anti-Fas antibody (CH-11), TRA-8 exhibited a better selectivity to RA synovial cells.

f) TRA-8 does not induce production of MMPs in RA synovial cells

Since TRA-8 is able to induce NF-kb activation in RA synovial cells as TNF-a, the effect of TRA-8 on the production of MMP1 and MMP3 of synovial cells is determined. While TNF-a induced a dose-dependent increase of MMPs,

TRA-8 is unable to induce any production of MMPs, and in some concentrations, TRA-8 slightly decreased the production of MMPs in RA synovial cells.

g) TRA-8 induces multiple caspase activation.

Since caspases play a crucial role in induction of apoptosis. The ability of TRA-8 to induce caspase activation is determined in human Jurkat cells. When Jurkat cells are incubated with a low dose (50 ng/ml) of TRA-8, the activation of caspase 8, caspase 9, and caspase 3 is observed as early as 15 minutes after incubation as demonstrated by Western blot analysis and caspase cleavage analysis. In term of timing, number and strength of caspase activation, antibodies of the present invention including the demonstrative antibody TRA-8 exhibited a much better activity than any other known apoptosis-inducing antibodies, such as anti-human Fas antibody (CH-11).

The 2E12 antibody specifically binds DR4 in its soluble form, has *in vivo* and *in vitro* apoptosis-inducing activity in target cells expressing DR4 (including for example, cancer cells, rheumatoid arthritis synovial cells, activated immune cells like activated lymphocytes, and virally infected cells), has tumoricidal activity *in vivo* (preferably, in the absence of toxicity to non-tumor cells). Preferably the DR4 antibody of the invention has apoptosis-inducing activity characterized by less than about 60%, 50%, 40%, 30%, 20%, or10% target cell viability at antibody concentrations of less than 30 μg/ml, 3 μg/ml, .3 μg/ml, or .03 μg/ml and tumoricidal activity characterized by 10%, 20%, 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, or 100% reduction in tumor size. Thus, aAn antibody of the present invention is a substance having a property to selectively induce apoptosis in pathogenic cells as shown in effect (a) and (g). Accordingly, it is useful as a prophylactic and therapeutic agent for diseases associated with inappropriate survival of cells or inappropriate proliferation of cells, such as those attributable to dysregulation of apoptosis systems including the Fas/Fas ligand system.

The ability of an antibody of the present invention to induce apoptosis is confirmed by culturing cells such as the human leukemia cell line Jurkat (American

Type Culture No. TIB-152) and astrocytoma cell line 1321N1 in medium in which the test sample has been added, and determining the survival rate by, for example, an ATPLite assay.

Antibody of the present invention, especially DR5 and DR4 antibodies having almost the same immunogenicity to human as that of human antibodies, is used as an agent for prophylaxis or treatment of diseases associated with inappropriate survival or proliferation of cells, including those attributable to dysregulation of the apoptosis systems in inflammatory and autoimmune diseases illustratively including systemic lupus erythematosus, Hashimoto's disease, rheumatoid arthritis, graft-versus-host disease, Sjögren's syndrome, pernicious anemia, Addison disease, scleroderma, Goodpasture's syndrome, Crohn's disease, autoimmune hemolytic anemia, sterility, myasthenia gravis, multiple sclerosis, Basedow's disease, thrombopenia purpura, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, allergy; asthma, atopic disease; arteriosclerosis; myocarditis; cardiomyopathy; glomerular nephritis; hypoplastic anemia; rejection after organ transplantation and numerous malignancies of lung, prostate, liver, ovary, colon, cervix, lymphatic and breast tissues. The antibodies of the present invention can be used to target and selectively induce apoptosis in activated immune cells including activated lymphocytes, lymphoid cells, myeloid cells, and rheumatoid synovial cells (including inflammatory synoviocytes, macrophage-like synoviocytes, fibroblast-like synoviocytes) and in virally infected cells (including those infected with HIV, for example) so long as those targeted cells express or can be made to express the specific TRAIL receptors (i.e., DR4 or DR5).

Such a prophylactic or therapeutic agent may be administered in various forms. Suitable modes of administration include oral administration, such as by tablets, capsules, granules, powders and syrups, or parenteral administration, such as by injection or suppositories.

The antibody or therapeutic agent may be administered orally, rectally, intracisternally, intraventricular, intracranial, intrathecal, intra-articularly,

intravaginally, parenterally (intravenously, intramuscularly, or subcutaneously), locally (powders, ointments, or drops), intraperitoneally, transdermally, by inhalation or as a buccal or nasal spray. The exact amount of the antibody or therapeutic agent required will vary from subject to subject, depending on the age, weight and general condition of the subject, the severity of the disease that is being treated, the location and size of the tumor, the particular compounds used, the mode of administration, and the like. An appropriate amount may be determined by one of ordinary skill in the art using only routine experimentation given the teachings herein. Typical single dosages of antibody range from 0.1-10,000 micrograms, preferably between 1 and 100 micrograms. Typical antibody concentrations in a carrier range from 0.2 to 2000 nanograms per delivered milliliter. For injection into a joint, volumes of antibody and carrier will vary depending upon the joint, but approximately 0.5-10 ml, and preferably 1-5ml, is injected into a human knee and approximately 0.1 –5ml, and preferably 1-2 ml into the human ankle.

Depending on the intended mode of administration, the antibody or therapeutic agent can be in pharmaceutical compositions in the form of solid, semi-solid or liquid dosage forms, such as, for example, tablets, suppositories, pills, capsules, powders, liquids, or suspensions, preferably in unit dosage form suitable for single administration of a precise dosage. The compositions will include an effective amount of the selected substrate in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and, in addition, may include other medicinal agents, pharmaceutical agents, carriers, or diluents. By "pharmaceutically acceptable" is meant a material that is not biologically or otherwise undesirable, which can be administered to an individual along with the selected substrate without causing significant undesirable biological effects or interacting in a deleterious manner with any of the other components of the pharmaceutical composition in which it is contained.

Compositions suitable for parenteral injection may comprise physiologically acceptable sterile aqueous or nonaqueous solutions, dispersions, suspensions or

emulsions, and sterile powders for reconstitution into sterile injectable solutions or dispersions. Examples of suitable aqueous and nonaqueous carriers, diluents, solvents or vehicles include water, ethanol, polyols (propyleneglycol, polyethyleneglycol, glycerol, and the like), suitable mixtures thereof, vegetable oils (such as olive oil) and injectable organic esters such as ethyl oleate. Proper fluidity can be maintained, for example, by the use of a coating such as lecithin, by the maintenance of the required particle size in the case of dispersions and by the use of surfactants.

These compositions may also contain adjuvants such as preserving, wetting, emulsifying, and dispensing agents. Prevention of the action of microorganisms can be ensured by various antibacterial and antifungal agents, for example, parabens, chlorobutanol, phenol, sorbic acid, and the like. It may also be desirable to include isotonic agents, for example, sugars, sodium chloride, and the like. Prolonged absorption of the injectable pharmaceutical form can be brought about by the use of agents delaying absorption, for example, aluminum monostearate and gelatin.

Solid dosage forms for oral administration include capsules, tablets, pills, powders, and granules. In such solid dosage forms, the active compound is admixed with at least one inert customary excipient (or carrier) such as sodium citrate or dicalcium phosphate or (a) fillers or extenders, as for example, starches, lactose, sucrose, glucose, mannitol, and silicic acid, (b) binders, as for example, carboxymethylcellulose, alignates, gelatin, polyvinylpyrrolidone, sucrose, and acacia, (c) humectants, as for example, glycerol, (d) disintegrating agents, as for example, agar-agar, calcium carbonate, potato or tapioca starch, alginic acid, certain complex silicates, and sodium carbonate, (e) solution retarders, as for example, paraffin, (f) absorption accelerators, as for example, quaternary ammonium compounds, (g) wetting agents, as for example, cetyl alcohol, and glycerol monostearate, (h) adsorbents, as for example, kaolin and bentonite, and (i) lubricants, as for example, talc, calcium stearate, magnesium stearate, solid

polyethylene glycols, sodium lauryl sulfate, or mixtures thereof. In the case of capsules, tablets, and pills, the dosage forms may also comprise buffering agents.

Solid compositions of a similar type may also be employed as fillers in soft and hard-filled gelatin capsules using such excipients as lactose or milk sugar as well as high molecular weight polyethyleneglycols, and the like.

Solid dosage forms such as tablets, dragees, capsules, pills, and granules can be prepared with coatings and shells, such as enteric coatings and others well known in the art. They may contain opacifying agents, and can also be of such composition that they release the active compound or compounds in a certain part of the intestinal tract in a delayed manner. Examples of embedding compositions which can be used are polymeric substances and waxes. The active compounds can also be in micro-encapsulated form, if appropriate, with one or more of the above-mentioned excipients.

Liquid dosage forms for oral administration include pharmaceutically acceptable emulsions, solutions, suspensions, syrups, and elixirs. In addition to the active compounds, the liquid dosage forms may contain inert diluents commonly used in the art, such as water or other solvents, solubilizing agents and emulsifiers, as for example, ethyl alcohol, isopropyl alcohol, ethyl carbonate, ethyl acetate, benzyl alcohol, benzyl alcohol, benzyl benzoate, propyleneglycol, 1,3-butyleneglycol, dimethylformamide, oils, in particular, cottonseed oil, groundnut oil, corn germ oil, olive oil, castor oil and sesame oil, glycerol, tetrahydrofurfuryl alcohol, polyethyleneglycols and fatty acid esters of sorbitan or mixtures of these substances, and the like.

Besides such inert diluents, the composition can also include adjuvants, such as wetting agents, emulsifying and suspending agents, sweetening, flavoring, and perfuming agents.

Suspensions, in addition to the active compounds, may contain suspending agents, as for example, ethoxylated isostearyl alcohols, polyoxyethylene sorbitol and

sorbitan esters, microcrystalline cellulose, aluminum metahydroxide, bentonite, agar-agar and tragacanth, or mixtures of these substances, and the like.

Compositions for rectal administrations are preferably suppositories which can be prepared by mixing the compounds of the present invention with suitable non-irritating excipients or carriers such as cocoa butter, polyethyleneglycol or a suppository wax, which are solid at ordinary temperatures but liquid at body temperature and therefore, melt in the rectum or vaginal cavity and release the active component.

Dosage forms for topical administration of a compound of this invention include ointments, powders, sprays, and inhalants. The active component is admixed under sterile conditions with a physiologically acceptable carrier and any preservatives, buffers, or propellants as may be required. Ophthalmic formulations, ointments, powders, and solutions are also contemplated as being within the scope of this invention.

The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters, amides, and prodrugs" as used herein refers to those carboxylate salts, amino acid addition salts, esters, amides, and prodrugs of the compounds of the present invention which are, within the scope of sound medical judgment, suitable for use in contact with the tissues of patients without undue toxicity, irritation, allergic response, and the like, commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio, and effective for their intended use, as well as the zwitterionic forms, where possible, of the compounds of the invention. The term "salts" refers to the relatively non-toxic, inorganic and organic acid addition salts of compounds of the present invention. These salts can be prepared *in situ* during the final isolation and purification of the compounds or by separately reacting the purified compound in its free base form with a suitable organic or inorganic acid and isolating the salt thus formed. Representative salts include the hydrobromide, hydrochloride, sulfate, bisulfate, nitrate, acetate, oxalate, valerate, oleate, palmitate, stearate, laurate, borate, benzoate, lactate, phosphate, tosylate, citrate, maleate, fumarate, succinate, tartrate, naphthylate mesylate,

glucoheptonate, lactobionate, methane sulphonate and laurylsulphonate salts, and the like. These may include cations based on the alkali and alkaline earth metals, such as sodium, lithium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, and the like, as well as non-toxic ammonium, quaternary ammonium and amine cations including, but not limited to ammonium, tetramethylammonium, tetraethylammonium, methylamine, dimethylamine, trimethylamine, triethylamine, ethylamine, and the like. (See, for example, S.M. Barge et al., "Pharmaceutical Salts," *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 1977, 66:1-19 which is incorporated herein by reference.)

The term "prodrug" refers to compounds that are rapidly transformed *in vivo* to yield the parent compounds of the above formula, for example, by hydrolysis in blood. A thorough discussion is provided in T. Higuchi and V. Stella, "Pro-drugs as Novel Delivery Systems," Vol. 14 of the A.C.S. Symposium Series, and in *Bioreversible Carriers in Drug Design*, ed. Edward B. Roche, American Pharmaceutical Association and Pergamon Press, 1987.

A target cell is a cell of an animal illustratively including human, non-human primate, cats, dogs, rat, mouse, guinea pig, rabbit, goat, sheep, cow, horse, chicken, pig, marmoset and ferret.

In addition, the antibody or therapeutic agent of the present invention can exist in unsolvated as well as solvated forms with pharmaceutically acceptable solvents such as water, ethanol, and the like. In general, the solvated forms are considered equivalent to the unsolvated forms for the purposes of the present invention.

Antibody molecules are purified by known techniques illustratively including amino absorption or amino affinity chromatography, chromatographic techniques such as high pressure liquid chromatography, or a combination thereof.

Another aspect of the present invention includes a pharmaceutical product for use in delivering biologically active anti-TRAIL receptor antibody or humanized anti-TRAIL receptor antibody to a vertebrate. The pharmaceutical product includes a pharmaceutically effective quantity of anti-TRAIL receptor antibody or fragment

thereof, a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, and a container enclosing the carrier and the antibody in a sterile fashion.

In a preferred embodiment of the invention, a pharmaceutically effective amount of an antibody of the invention inhibits cell proliferation or induces apoptosis by contact with a target cell or with target cells. A pharmaceutically effective amount or quantity of an antibody recognizing either DR5 or DR4 or a humanized antibody recognizing either DR5 or DR4 is an amount administered to an individual sufficient to cause a desired effect. As used herein, the terms "pharmaceutically effective amount" and "therapeutic quantity" are synonymous. Desired effects of administration of a pharmaceutically effective amount of DR5 or DR4 recognizing antibodies include death of one or more target cells, growth inhibition of one or more target cells, stimulation of DR5 or DR4, respectively, binding to DR5 or DR4, respectively, and increased NFkB levels or activity in a target cell. A target cell is a cell that expresses DR5 or DR4 and illustratively includes abnormally growing cells and tumor cells such as papillomas and warts; breast cancer, colon cancer, hepatomas, leukemias, lung cancer, melanoma, myelomas, osteosarcomas, ovarian cancer, pancreatic cancer, prostate cancer, cancer of the head and neck, thyroid cancer, uterine cancer, tumors of the brain such as astrocytomas, activated immune cells (e.g., activated lymphocytes, lymphoid and myeloid cells), inflammatory cells, rheumatoid arthritis synovial cells, and virally infected cells. In vivo, the target cell is a cell of an individual with a pathological condition, including those where cell proliferation is abnormal or dysregulated such as malignant or benign cancer and rheumatoid arthritis.

In another preferred embodiment, the target cell is also contacted by a therapeutic agent. Thus, the antibodies and compositions of the present invention can be administered alone or in combination with one or more therapeutic agents. The therapeutic agents include but are not limited to other members of the TNF family, chemotherapeutic agents, antibodies, antivirals, steroidal and non-steroidal anti-inflammatories, conventional immunotherapeutic agents, cytokines,

chemokines, and/or growth factors. Combinations may be administered either concomitantly (e.g., as an admixture), separately but simultaneously (e.g., via separate intravenous lines into the same subject), or sequentially (e.g., one of the compounds or agents is given first followed by the second). Thus, the term "combination" or "combined" is used to refer to either concomitant, simultaneous, or sequential administration of two or more agents.

In one embodiment the combination therapy includes administration of members of the TNF family. TNF, TNF related or TNF-like molecules that may be administered with the antibody of the invention include but are not limited to soluble forms of TNF-α, lymphotoxin-α (LT-α, also known as TNF-β), LT-β (found in complex heterotrimer LT-α2-β) OPGL, FasL, CD27L, CD30L, CD40L, 4-1BBL, DcR3, OX40L, TNF-γ (WO 96/14328), TRAIL, AIM-II (WO 97/34911), APRIL (J. Exp. Med. 188:1185-90), endokine-α (WO98/07880), TR6 (WO 98/30694), OPG and nerve growth factor (NGF), and soluble forms of Fas, CD30, CD27, CD40 and 4-IBB, TR2 (WO 96/34095), DR3 (WO97/33904), DR4 (WO 98/32856), TR5 (WO 98/30693), TRANK, TR9 (WO 98/56892), TRIO (WO 98/54202), 312C2 (WO 98/06842), and TR12, and soluble forms of CD154, CD70, and CD153.

In another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with naturally occurring, synthetic or engineered CD40 ligands (CD40L), including, for example, a soluble form of CD40L (e.g., AVREND), biologically active fragments, variants or derivatives of CD40L, CD40L antibodies (e.g., agonistic or antagonistic antibodies), and/or CD40 antibodies (e.g., agonistic or antagonistic).

In yet another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with one, two, three, four, five, or more of the following: tacrolimus (Fujisawa), thalidomide (e.g., Celgene), anti Tac (Fv)-PE40 (e.g., Protein Design Labs), inolimomab (Biotest), MAK-195F (Knoll), ASM-981 (Novartis), interleukin-1 receptor (e.g., Immunex), interleukin-4 receptor (e.g., Immunex), ICM3 (ICOS), BMS-188667 (Bristol Myers Squibb), anti-TNF Ab (e.g., Therapeutic Antibodies),

CG-1088 (Celgene), anti-B7 monoclonal antibody (e.g., Innogetics), MEDI-507 (BioTransplant), and ABX-CBL (Abgenix).

According to the invention, the antibody of the invention can be administered with Fas ligand (Fas-L) or a Fas antibody that binds Fas and transduces the biological signal that results in apoptosis. Preferably, the Fas antibodies employed according to this method are monoclonal antibodies.

In certain embodiments, antibodies of the invention are administered in combination with anti-retroviral agents, nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, and/or protease inhibitors. Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors that may be administered in combination with the antibodies of the invention, include but are not limited to RETROVIR® (zidovudine/AZT) (Gaxo-Wellcome, Research Triangle Park, NC), VIDEX® (didanosine/ddI) (Bristol-Myers Squibb, New York), HIVID® (zalcitabine/ddC) (Roche, Nutley, New Jersey), ZERIT® (stavudine) (Bristol-Myers Squibb). Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors that may be administered in combination with the antibody of the present invention include but are not limited to VIRAMUNE® (nevirapine) (Boehringer Ingelheim/Roxanne, Columbus, Ohio), RESCRIPTOR® (delavirdine) (Pharmacia & Upjohn Company, Kalamazoo, Michigan), and SUSTIVA® (efavirenz) (Bristol-Myers Squibb).

Protease inhibitors that may be administered in combination with the antibodies of the invention include but are not limited to CRIXIVAN® (indinavir sulfate)(Merck & Company, Whitehouse Station, NJ), NORVIR® (ritonavir)(Abbott Laboratories, Chicago, IL), INVIRASE® (saquinavir)(Roche Pharmaceuticals, Nutley, NJ), and VIRACEPT® (nelfinavir)(Agouron Pharmaceuticals, SanDiego, CA). In a specific embodiment, antiretroviral agents, nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, and /or protease inhibitors may be used in any combination with compositions of the invention to treat AIDS and/or prevent or treat HIV infection.

In other embodiments, the antibody of the invention may be administered in combination with anti-opportunistic infection agents. Anti-opportunistic agents that may be administered in combination with the compositions of the invention include, but are not limited to, trimethoprim- pentamidine, sulfamethoxazole, DAPSONE® (Jacobus Pharmaceuticals, Princeton, NJ), ATOVAQUONE® (GlaxoSMithKline, Research Triangle Park, NC), ISONIAZID® (CIBA Pharmaceuticals, Summit, NJ), RIFADIN® (rifampin)(Hoechst-Marrion-Roussel, Kansas City, MO), PYRAZINAMIDE® (Ledelrle, Pearl River, NY), BIAXIN® (clarithromycin) (Abbott Laboratories, Chicago, IL), ETHAMBUTOL® (Ledelrle, Pearl River, NY), RIFABUTIN® (Pharmacia & Upjohn Company, Kalamazoo, MI), AZITHROMYCIN® (Pfizer Inc., NewYork, NY), GANCICLOVIR (Roche Pharmaceuticals, Nutley, NJ), FOSCARNET® (Astra, Westborough, MA), CIDOFOVIR® (Gilead Sciences, Foster City, CA), KETOCONAZOLE® (Janssen, Titusville, NJ), FLUCONAZOLE® (Pfizer Inc., NewYork, NY), ITRACONAZOLE® (Janssen, Titusville, NJ), ACYCLOVIR® (Glaxo-Wellcome, Research Triangle Park, NC), FAMCICOLCIR® (SmithKline Beecham Pharmaceuticals, Pittsburgh, PA), pyrimethamine, leucovorin, NEUPOGEN® (filgrastim/GM-CSF) (Amgen, Thousand Oaks, CA), and LEUKINE® (sargramostim/GM-CSF) (Immunex, Seattle, WA).

In a specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is used in any combination with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and/or Atovaquone, Dapsone, Pentamidine, to prophylactically treat and/or prevent an opportunistic *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia infection.

In another specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is used in any combination with Isoniazid, RIFADIN® (Merrell Dow Pharmaceuticals, Cincinnati, Ohio), Pyrazinamide, and/or Ethambutol to prophylactically treat and/or prevent an opportunistic *Mycobacterium avium* complex infection. In another specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is used in any combination with Rifabutin, Clarithromycin, and/or Azithromycin to prophylactically treat and/or

prevent an opportunistic Mycobacterium tuberculosis infection. In another specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is used in any combination with Ganciclovir, Foscarnet, and/or Cidofovir, to prophylactically treat and/or prevent an opportunistic cytomegalovirus infection. In another specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is used in any combination with Fluconazole, Traconazole, and/or ketoconazole to prophylactically treat and/or prevent an opportunistic fungal infection. In another specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is used in any combination with Acyclovir and/or Famcicolvir to prophylactically treat and/or prevent an opportunistic herpes simplex virus type I and/or type II infection. In another specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is used in any combination with pyrimethamine and/or leucovorin to prophylactically treat and/or prevent an opportunistic *Toxoplasma gondii* infection. In another specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is used in any combination with leucovorin and/or NEUPOGEN® (Amgen, Thousand Oaks, CA) to prophylactically treat and/or prevent an opportunistic bacterial infection.

In a further embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with an antiviral agent. Antiviral agents that may be administered include, but are not limited to, acyclovir, ribavirin, amantadine, and remantidine.

In a further embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with an antibacterial agent. Antibacterial agents that may be administered with the compositions of the invention include, but are not limited to, amoxicillin, aminoglycosides, beta-lactam (glycopeptide), betalactamases, clindamycin, chloramphenicol, cephalosporins, ciprofloxacin, erythromycin, fluroquinolones, macrolides, metronidazole, penicillins, quinolones, ritampin, streptomycin, sulfonamide, tetracyclines, trimethoprim, trimethoprim-sulfamthoxazole, and vancomycin.

Conventional nonspecific immunosuppressive agents, that may be administered in combination with the antibody of the invention include, but are not limited to steroids, cyclosporine, cyclosporine analogs, cyclophosphamide

methylprednisone, prednisone, azathioprine, FK-506 (Fujisawa Pharmaceuticals, Deerfield, IL),15 deoxyspergualin, and other immunosuppressive agents that act by suppressing the function of responding immune cells (including, for example, T cells), directly (e.g., by acting on the immune cell) or indirectly (by acting on other mediating cells).

In specific embodiments, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with immunosuppressants. Immunosuppressants preparations that may be administered with the antibody of the invention include, but are not limited to, ORTHOCLONE® (OKT3) (Ortho Biotech, Raritan, NJ), SANDIMMUNE® ORAL (cyclosporine) (Sandoz Pharmaceuticals, Hanover, NJ), PROGRAF® (tacrolimus) (Fujisawa Pharmaceuticals, Deerfield, IL), CELLCEPT® (mycophenolate) (Roche Pharmaceuticals, Nutley, NJ), azathioprine, glucorticosteroids, and RAPAMUNE® (sirolimus) (Wyeth, Collegeville, PA). In a specific embodiment, immunosuppressants in combination with the antibody may be used to prevent rejection of organ or bone marrow transplantation.

In an additional embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered alone or in combination with one or more intravenous immunoglobulin preparations. Intravenous immunoglobulin preparations that may be administered with the antibody of the invention include, but not limited to, GAMMARE® (Centeon, Kankakee, IL), IVEEGAM® (Immuno-US Inc., Rochester, MI), SANDOGLOBULFN® (Sandoz Pharmaceuticals, Hanover, NJ), GAMMAGARD® (Baxter Healthcare, Glendale, CA), and GAMIMUNE® (Bayer Biological, West Haven, CT). In a specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with intravenous immunoglobulin preparations in transplantation therapy (e.g., bone marrow transplant).

In an additional embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered alone or in combination with an anti-inflammatory agent. Anti-inflammatory agents that may be administered with the compositions of the invention include, but are not limited to, glucocorticoids and the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatories,

aminoarylcarboxylic acid derivatives, arylacetic acid derivatives, arylbutyric acid derivatives, arylcarboxylic acids, arylpropionic acid derivatives, pyrazoles, pyrazolones, salicylic acid derivatives, thiazinecarboxamides, e-acetamidocaproic acid, S-adenosylmethionine, 3-amino4-hydroxybutyric acid, amixetrine, bendazac, benzydamine, bucolome, difenpiramide, ditazol, emorfazone, guaiazulene, nabumetone, ninesulide, orgotein, oxaceprol, paranyline, perisoxal, pifoxime, proquazone, proxazole, and tenidap.

In one embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with steroid therapy. Steroids that may be administered in combination include methylprednisolone (e.g., IV methylprednisolone). In a specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with prednisone. In a further specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with prednisone and an immunosuppressive agent. Immunosuppressive agents that may be administered and prednisone are those described herein, and include, but are not limited to, azathioprine, cyclophosphamide, and cyclophosphamide IV. In a specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with methylprednisolone. In a further specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with methylprednisolone and an immunosuppressive agent. Immunosuppressive agents that may be administered with methylprednisolone are those described herein, and include, but are not limited to, azathioprine, cyclophosphamide, and cyclophosphamide IV.

In another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with an antimalarial. Antimalarials that may be administered with the compositions of the invention include, but are not limited to, hydroxychloroquine, chloroquine, and/or quinacrine.

In yet another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with an NSAID. Optionally, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with one, two, three, four, five, ten, or more of the

following drugs: NRD-101 (Hoechst Marion Roussel, Kansas City, MO), diclofenac (Dimethaid, Ontario, CN), oxaprozin potassium (Monsanto), mecasermin (Chiron, Emeryville, CA), T-614 (Toyama), pemetrexed disodium (Eli Lilly, Indianapolis, IN), atreleuton (Abbott, Chicago, IL), valdecoxib (Monsanto), eltenac (Byk Gulden, Melville, NY), campath, AGM-1470 (Takeda, Lincolnshire, IL), CDP-571 (Celltech, Rochester, NY), CM-101 (CarboMed, Nashville, TN), ML-3000 (Merck), CB-2431 (KS Biomedix, Surrey, UK), CBF, BS2 (KS Biomedix, Surrey, UK), IL-Ira gene therapy (Valentis, Burlingame, CA), JTE-522 (Japan Tobacco, Tokyo, Japan), paclitaxel (Angiotech, Vancouver, BC), DW-166HC (Dong Wha, Seoul, Korea), darbufelone mesylate (Pfizer Inc., NewYork, NY), soluble TNF receptor 1 (synergen; Amgen, Thousand Oaks, CA), IPR 6001 (Institute for Pharmaceutical Research), trocade (Hoffman-La Roche, Nutley, NJ), EF5 (Scotia Pharmaceuticals), BIIL-284 (Boehringer Ingelheim, Ridgefield, CT), BIIF-1149 (Boehringer Ingelheim, Ridgefield, CT), LEUKOVAX® (Inflammatics, Malvern, PA), MK-663 (Merck, Whitehouse Station, NJ), ST-1482 (Sigma-Tau, Gaithersburg, MD), and butixocort propionate (Pfizer Inc., NewYork, NY).

In yet another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with one or more DMARDs. Thus, one, two, three, four, five or more of the following drugs can be used: methotrexate, leflunomide, edatrexate, epiroprim, iometrexol, pyritrexim, trimetrexate, brodimoprim, MX-68, N-[4-[3-(2,4-diamino-6,7-dihydro-5H-cyclopenta[d]-pyrimidin-5-yl)propyl]benzoyl]-L-glutamic acid, N-[[5-[2-(2-amino-1,4,5,6,7,8-hexahydro-4-oxypyryrido[2.3-d]pyrimidim-6-yl)ethyl]-2-thienyl]carbonyl]-L-glutamic acid, (R)N-[[5-[2-(2-amino-1,4,5,6,7,8-hexahydro-4-oxopyrido[2,3-d]prrimidin-6-yl)ethyl]-2-thienyl]-carbonyl]L-glutamic acid, N-((2,4-diamino-3,4,5,6,7,8-hexahydropyrido[2,3-d]pyrimidin-6-yl)ethyl)-2-thienylcarbonyl-L-glutamic acid, (S)-2-[[[4-carboxy-4-[[4-[[(2,4-diamino-6-pteridinyl)methyl]amino]benzoyl]amino]butyl]amino]carbonyl]benzoic acid, N-[4-[3-(2,4-diamino-1-H-pyrrolo[2,3-d]pyrimidin-5-yl)proply]benzoyl]-L-glutamic acid, 2,4-diamino-6-(N-(4-(phenylsulfonyl)benzyl)methylamino)quinazoline, 2,4-

diamino-5-[4-[3-(4-aminophenyl-4-sulfonylphenylamino)propoxy]-3,5-dimethoxybenzyl]pyrimidine, N-[4-4-(2,4-diamino-5-pyrimidinyl)butyl]benzoyl]-L-glutamic acid, N-[4-[3-(2,4-diamino-5-pyrimidinyl)propyl]benzoyl]-L-glutamic acid, N-[4-[2-(2,4-diamino-6-pteridinyl)ethyl]-benzoyl]-4-methylene-DL-glutamic acid and N-(1-methylethyl)-N'[3-(2,4,5-trichlorophenoxy)propoxy] imidodicarbonimidic diamide hydrochloride (PS15), sulfasalazine, sodium aurothiomalate, auranofin, cyclosporine, penicillamine, azathioprine, an antimalarial drug (e.g., as described herein), cyclophosphamide, chlorambucil, gold, Enbrel (etanercept) (Wyeth-Ayerst Laboratories, Philadelphia, PA), anti TNF antibody, and prednisolone. In a more preferred embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with an antimalarial, methotrexate, anti-TNF, Enbrel and/or sulfasalazine.

In one embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with methotrexate. In another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with anti-TNF antibody. In another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with methotrexate and anti-TNF antibody or anti-Fas antibody. In another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with sulfasalazine.

In another specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with methotrexate, anti-TNF antibody, anti-Fas antibody and sulfasalazine. In another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination Enbrel. In another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with Enbrel and methotrexate. In another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with Enbrel, methotrexate, sulfasalazine, leflunomide, etroricoxib, misoprostol/diclofenac sodium, valdecoxib, tiracoxib, rofecoxib, celecoxib, galantamine, darbufelone mesilate, aceclofenac, ML-3000, anakinra, hvaluronate sodium, nimesulide, mycophenolate mofetil, diacerein, sivelestst sodium, deflazacort, nalmefene hydrochloride, samarium-153 lexidronam pentasodium, pentostatin, T-614,

amiprilose hydrochloride, rocepafant, ampiroxicam, prednisolone famesylate, meloxicam, diclofenac sodium, lomoxicam, salazosulfapyridine, etodolac, flupirtine maleate, ebselen, tacrolimus hydrate, nabumetone, cloprednol, piroxicam cinnamate, proquazone, rimexolone, fenretinide, imidazole hydroxybenzoate, droxicam, fentiazac, alfacalcidol, halopredone diacetate, gusperimus hydrochloride, inosine pranobex, actarit, indometacin farnesil, mizoribine, tolfenamic acid, diflunisal, piroxicam, oxaprozin, hyaluronate sodium, bucillamine, ciclosporin, floctafenine, tenoxicam, dexamethasone palmitate, amfenac sodium, acemetacin, auranofin, lobenzarit disodium, or any combination thereof.

In another embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with Enbrel, methotrexate and sulfasalazine. In other embodiments, one or more antimalarials are combined with one of the above-cited combinations. In a specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with an antimalarial (e.g., hydroxychloroquine), Enbrel, methotrexate and sulfasalazine. In another specific embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with an antimalarial (e.g. hydroxychloroquine), sulfasalazine, anti-TNF antibody, and methotrexate.

In another embodiment, antibody of the invention is administered in combination with a chemotherapeutic agent. Chemotherapeutic agents that may be administered with the compositions of the invention include, but are not limited to, antibiotic derivatives (e.g. doxorubicin, bleomycin, daunorubicin, and dactinomycin); antiestrogens (e.g., tamoxifen); antimetabolites (e.g., fluorouracil, 5-FU, methotrexate, floxuridine, interferon alpha-2B, glutamic acid, plicamycin, mercaptopurine, and 6-thioguanine); cytotoxic agents (e.g., carmustine, BCNU, lomustine, CCNU, cytosine arabinoside, cyclophosphamide, estramustine, hydroxyurea, procarbazine, mitomycin, busulfan, cis-platin, and vincristine sulfate); hormones (e.g., medroxyprogesterone, estramustine phosphate sodium, ethinyl estradiol, estradiol, megestrol acetate, methyltestosterone, diethylstilbestrol diphosphate, chlorotrianisene, and testolactone); nitrogen mustard derivatives (e.g.,

mephalen, chorambucil, mechlorethamine (nitrogen mustard) and thiotepa); steroids and combinations (e.g., bethamethasone sodium phosphate); and others (e.g., dicarbazine, asparaginase, mitotant, vincristine sulfate, vinblastine sulfate, and etoposide). Others chemotherapeutics include, e.g., CPT-11, deflunomide, cycloheximide, and mitomycin.

In a specific embodiment, antibody of the invention is administered in combination with CHOP (cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone) or any combination of the components of CHOP. In another embodiment, antibody of the invention is administered in combination with Rituximab. In a further embodiment, antibody of the invention is administered with Rituxmab and CHOP, or Rituxmab and any combination of the components of CHOP.

In an additional embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with cytokines. Cytokines that may be administered with the compositions of the invention include, but are not limited to, GM-CSF, G-CSF, IL-lalpha, IL-Ibeta, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12, IL-13, IL-14, IL-15, IL-16, IL-17, IL-18, IL-19, IL-20, IL-21, anti-CD40, CD40L, IFN-alpha, IFN-beta, IFN-gamma, TNF-alpha, and TNFbeta.

In an additional embodiment, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with hematopoietic growth factors. Hematopoietic growth factors that may be administered with the compositions of the invention included, but are not limited to, LEUKINE® (sargramostim) and NEUPOGEN® (filgrast).

In additional embodiments, the antibody of the invention is administered in combination with one or more other therapeutic or prophylactic regimens, such as, for example, radiation therapy.

As used throughout, a "therapeutic agent" is a compound or composition effective in ameliorating a pathological condition. Illustrative example of a therapeutic agent include an anti-cancer compound, members of the TNF family, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-viral agents, anti-retroviral agents, anti-opportunistic

agents, antibiotics, immunosuppressive agents, immunoglobulins, antimalarial agents, disease modifying anti-rheumatic drugs (DMARDs), cytokines, chemokines, growth factors, and second antibodies that promotes apoptosis of the target cells.

An anti-cancer compound or chemotherapeutic agent is a compound or composition effective in inhibiting or arresting the growth of an abnormally growing cell. Thus, such an agent may be used therapeutically to treat cancer as well as other diseases marked by abnormal cell growth. A pharmaceutically effective amount of an anti-cancer compound is an amount administered to an individual sufficient to cause inhibition or arrest of the growth of an abnormally growing cell. Illustrative examples of anti-cancer compounds include: bleomycin, carboplatin, chlorambucil, cisplatin, colchicine, cyclophosphamide, daunorubicin, dactinomycin, diethylstilbestrol doxorubicin, etoposide, 5-fluorouracil, floxuridine, melphalan, methotrexate, mitomycin, 6-mercaptopurine, teniposide, 6-thioguanine, vincristine and vinblastine. Further examples of anti-cancer compounds and therapeutic agents are found in The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy, 15th Ed., Berkow et al., eds., 1987, Rahway, N.J. and Sladek et al. Metabolism and Action of Anti-Cancer Drugs, 1987, Powis et al. eds., Taylor and Francis, New York, N.Y.

Antibody of the present invention can be further combined with other therapies, such as chemotherapy and/or radiotherapy in the treatment of malignancy, and therapeutic efficacy can be enhanced by apoptosis-inducing compounds, such as bisindolylmaleimide VIII (BisVIII) or other sensitizing agents like SN-50 or LY294002. Thus, in one embodiment, the antibody or antibodies of the present invention can be combined with BisVIII or other sensitizing agent and a chemotherapeutic (e.g., adriamycin, etoposide, topetecan, taxotere, or paclitaxel). In another embodiment, the antibody or antibodies of the present invention can be combined with a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug (e.g., sulindac sulfide or other COX-1 or COX-2 inhibitors) a chemotherapeutic (e.g., adriamycin, etoposide, topetecan, taxotere, or paclitaxel). In the treatment of other diseases, e.g., autoimmune and inflammatory diseases, combinations of treatment can also be used.

For example, an antibody can be administered in conjunction with other therapeutic agents like anti-inflammatory agents, DMARDs, chemotherapeutic agents, methotrexate, bisindolylmaleimide VIII or other sensitizing agents, and the like. Radiotherapy can also be combined with other therapeutic agents in the treatment of inflammatory and autoimmune diseases. One skilled in the art would adapt the form of radiotherapy to the specific inflammatory or autoimmune disease (e.g., radiation synovectomy in the treatment of arthritis).

Therapy using an antibody of the present invention can also be combined with therapy using another antibody. For example, an antibody to DR5 can be administered to a subject in need thereof along with, prior to, or following administration of an antibody to DR4, TNF, B7, CD40 ligand, CD40, CD20 (e.g., rituximab), Fas, or a combination thereof. Such combined antibody therapy can be further combined with administration of one or more therapeutic agents (e.g., chemotherapeutics, doxorubicin, and/or methotrexate), radiotherapy, or both.

Thus, the invention provides a method of selectively inducing apoptosis or inhibiting proliferation in target cells expressing DR5, comprising the steps of (a) contacting the target cells with a therapeutic quantity of an antibody that specifically binds a TRAIL receptor DR5, wherein said antibody, in its soluble form, has in vivo and in vitro apoptosis-inducing activity in target cells expressing DR5 and (b) contacting the target cells with a therapeutic quantity of one or more therapeutic agents. In one embodiment, one or both of the contacting steps are optionally performed *in vivo*. In another embodiment, one or both contacting steps are performed *in vitro*. The target cells can be selected from cells showing disregulation of the apoptosis system, neutrophils, activated lymphocytes or other activated immune cells (e.g., lymphoid cells and myeloid cells), virally infected cells, and abnormally proliferating synovial cells (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis synovial cells, including inflammatory synovial cells, activated lymphoid and myeloid cells in the synovium, macrophage-like synoviocytes, and fibroblast-like synoviocytes) of autoimmune diseases. Compared to previously published anti-DR5 antibody (24),

the apoptosis-inducing activity of the demonstrative TRA-8 antibody of the present invention is very strong, and is able to induce apoptosis of Jurkat cells with the pg/ml levels *in vitro* and demonstrates superior *in vivo* tumoricidal activity as compared to previously reported soluble TRAIL. The intravenous administration of a single dose of TRA-8 is sufficient to inhibit the growth of both solid tumor and hematopoietic tumor cells, whereas induction of *in vivo* tumor regression with the soluble TRAIL requires much high dose (500 μg every day for 10 days). The anti-TRAIL receptor antibodies of the present invention appear to be as safe as soluble TRAIL since exemplary antibody TRA-8 does not induce apoptosis of non-transformed fibroblast cells. Similar results have been observed with DR4 antibodies.

Vectors of the present invention include a nucleic acid sequence encoding a heavy or light chain immunoglobulin of a DR5 or DR4 antibody operably linked to a regulatory element such as a promoter or enhancer. "Operably linked" refers to an arrangement of nucleotide sequences configured so as to perform their usual function. Thus, a regulatory element operably linked to a nucleotide sequence encoding a polypeptide is capable of directing the transcription, replication and/or translation of the polypeptide. It will be recognized by those skilled in the art that a single vector optionally includes coding sequences for both a heavy and a light chain immunoglobulin of a DR5 or DR4 antibody. In one embodiment the vectors encode humanized light or heavy chain immunoglobulins.

The following examples are set forth below to illustrate the methods and results according to the present invention. These examples are not intended to be inclusive of all aspects of the present invention, but rather to illustrate representative methods and results. These examples are not intended to exclude equivalents and variations of the present invention which are apparent to one skilled in the art.

Example 1. Preparation of DR5 antigen

1.1 Cloning of DR5 cDNA

DNA encoding the human DR5 protein is cloned by the following RT-PCR method using:

a) Template

The total RNA of HeLa cells is extracted by using TRIzol Reagent (GIBCO BRL). The template for the PCR reaction used cDNA that is obtained by using the First-Strand cDNA synthesis kit (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech) according to the instruction manual provided with the kit.

b) PCR Primers

The following oligonucleotide primers are synthesized for the PCR:

5'-gacgatgcccgatctactttaaggg-3' (DR5p1: SEQ ID No. 1);

5'- ccactgggtgatgttggatggg-3' (DR5p2: SEQ ID No. 2);

Unless otherwise specified, all oligonucleotides in these Examples are synthesized by Lifetechnologies. All oligonucleotides are stored at –20°C after being dissolved in distilled water.

c) PCR reaction

Composition of the PCR reaction solution:

template cDNA, 5 µl of total 33 µl reaction

primer DR5p1, 10 pmol;

primer DR5p2, 10 pmol;

10 x concentrated PCR buffer (provided with the kit), 10 µl;

dNTPs (each 2.5 mM), 4 µl; and

Taq polymerase (Promega), 5 units.

Sterile distilled water is added to the solution to a total volume of 100 µl. Unless otherwise specified, dNTPs are an equimolar mixture of dATP, dCTP, dGTP and dTTP (2.5 mM each).

The PCR reaction is conducted as follows. The solution is first heated at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a cycle of heating to 94°C for 30 sec, 52°C for 1

minute and 72°C for 3 minutes, is repeated 40 times. After completion of this procedure, the reaction solution is heated at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The amplified DNA fragments, thus obtained, are separated on a 1% agarose gel containing 0.25 ug/ml ethidium bromide. The bands determined to contain the desired DNA fragments are cut out using a razor blade and the DNA is recovered therefrom using the Gene Clean kit (BIO101). The DNA fragment is cloned using the TA Cloning Kit (Invitrogen, CA). This is performed as follows.

The DNA fragment recovered from the PCR reaction solution, together with 50 ng of pCR2.1 vector which is provided with the TA Cloning kit, is mixed with 1 µl of 10 X ligase reaction buffer (6 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.5), 6 mM magnesium chloride, 5 mM sodium chloride, 7 mM β-mercaptoethanol, 0.1 mM ATP, 2 mM DTT, 1 mM spermidine, and 0.1 mg/ml bovine serum albumin), to which 4 units of T4 DNA ligase (1 µl) has been added. The total volume of the mixture is adjusted to 10 µl with sterile deionized water, and the resulting ligase solution is incubated at 14°C for 15 hours. After this time, 2 µl of the ligase reaction solution is added to 50 µl of competent *E. coli* strain TOP10F', which is provided with the TA cloning kit and brought to competence in accordance with the instruction manual, to which 2 µl of 0.5 M β-mercaptoethanol has been added, and the resulting mixture is kept on ice for 30 minutes, then at 42°C for 30 seconds, and again on ice for 5 minutes. Next, 500 µl of medium containing 2% v/v tryptone, 0.5% w/v yeast extract, 0.05% w/v sodium chloride, 2.5 mM potassium chloride, 1 mM magnesium chloride, and 20 mM glucose (hereinafter referred to as "SOC" medium) is added to the culture, and the mixture is incubated for 1 hour at 37°C with shaking. After this time, the culture is spread on an L-broth agar plate (1% v/v tryptone, 0.5% w/v yeast extract, 0.5% w/v sodium chloride, 0.1% w/v glucose, and 0.6% w/v bacto-agar (Difco)), containing 100 µg/ml. Ampicillin resistant colonies appearing on the plate are selected and scraped off with a platinum transfer loop, and cultured in L-broth medium containing 100 µg/ml ampicillin at 37°C, overnight, with shaking at 200

r.p.m. After incubation, the cells are harvested by centrifugation, from which plasmid DNA is prepared by the alkali method. EcoRI-EcoRI DR5cDNA fragment from the thus obtained plasmid is subcloned into pcDNA3 plasmid (Invitrogen, CA). The full length of the DR5 gene in pcDNA3 are sequenced and matched the published sequence. The thus obtained plasmid is designated as plasmid pcDNA3-DR5.

1.2 Construction of DR5-IgG expression vector

In order to obtain a soluble form of human DR5 lacking the transmembrane domain, an expression plasmid vector is constructed. This vector is designed to encode a fusion protein comprising the extracellular domain of human DR5 fused to the human IgG1 Fc DNA (41). DNA encoding the human DR5 lacking the transmembrane domain is obtained by the following PCR reaction.

a) Template

The template for the PCR reaction used pcDNA3-DR5.

b) PCR Primers

The following oligonucleotide primers are synthesized for the PCR:

5'-gacgatgcccgatctactttaaggg-3' (DR5p1: SEQ ID No. 1);

5'-ggatccgtggacacattcgatgtc-3' (DR5p3: SEQ ID No. 3);

Unless otherwise specified, all oligonucleotides in these Examples are synthesized by Lifetechnologies. All oligonucleotides are stored at -20°C after being dissolved in distilled water.

c) PCR reaction

The PCR reaction is conducted and amplified DNA isolated as per Example 1.1(c).

The thus obtained plasmid is designated as plasmid pCR-ΔDR5. The BamHI-EcoRI fragment encoded human Fc fragment which is recovered from pmFas-hIgG1Fc is subcloned into BamHI and EcoRI multi-cloning sites of pcDNA3. The plasmid thus obtained is designated pcDNAFc. Furthermore, the BamHI-BamHI fragment encoding the human soluble DR5 region which is

recovered from pCR-ΔDR5 is subcloned into the BamHI site of pcDNAFc plasmid. The thus obtained plasmid is designated as plasmid pcDNAΔDR5-Fc. The EcoRI fragment encoding the human soluble DR5-human IgG Fc region which is recovered from the pcDNAΔDR5-Fc plasmid is blunt ended by using the DNA polymerase Klenow fragment (GIBCO BRL) and then subcloned into the shuttle vector pAdCMV5 (Quantum Biotechnologies Inc., Canada) which is blunt ended after cutting by BamHI. The plasmid thus obtained is designated pAdΔDR5-Fc.

1.3 Expression and purification of the human DR5-IgG1 fusion protein

QBI-293A cells (provided with the ADENO-Quest Kit) are co-transfected with pAdΔDR5-Fc and QBI-viral DNA (provided with the ADENO-Quest Kit) using the ADENO-Quest kit (Quantum Biotechnologies Inc., Canada) according to the instruction manual. The recombinant virus plaques are cultured and screened for expression of DR5-IgG fusion protein by ELISA analysis of the supernatant. The positive plaques are amplified in QBI-293A cells and stored at –80°C as virus stock. Fifty dishes (150 mm) of QBI-293A cells are transfected with pAdΔDR5-Fc recombinant virus at 10 m.o.i. (Multiplicity of Infection). The culture media are harvested after transfection for 48 hours.

The transfected cells having the DR5-IgG gene are grown to a cell density of 1×10^6 cells/ml by incubation in 500 ml of DMEM (GIBCO) medium, containing 10% v/v FCS, at 37°C in an atmosphere of 5% v/v CO_2 for 2 days. The culture is then centrifuged (1,000 r.p.m., 5 minutes) and the supernatant collected. The purification of DR5-IgG from the supernatant is achieved using ProteinA-Sepharose CL-4B affinity chromatography (Pharmacia) under the following conditions:

column: ProteinA-Sepharose CL-4B column (column size 2 ml; Pharmacia);

elution buffer: 0.1 M glycine (pH 2.4), 0.15 M NaCl;

neutralization buffer: 1M Tris-HCl (pH 8.5).

After all of the supernatant is applied to the column, it is washed three times with 20 ml of PBS and then 1 ml of elution buffer is added 10 times. The optical density of each eluted fraction (1 ml) is measured. The second fraction through the fifth fraction (with $OD_{280} \geq 0.1$) are collected and after addition of 100 µl of neutralization buffer, the eluates are placed separately in dialysis tubing, and the eluates dialyzed against 1 liter of PBS (pH 7.5) at 4°C. The dialysis buffer being changed twice.

The eluates are then assayed for expression of the DR5-IgG gene product by ELISA. First, 100 µl of each fraction are placed separately into wells of a 96-well microplate (Costar) and incubated at 37°C for 1 hour. After this time, the solution in the wells is removed, and the plate is washed 3 times with 100 µl/well of PBS containing 0.1% v/v Tween 20 (hereinafter referred to as "PBS-Tween"). After washing, PBS containing 2% w/v bovine serum albumin (hereinafter referred to as "BSA") is added in quantities of 100 µl/well, and the plate is then incubated at 37°C for 1 hour. After this time, the wells are washed a further 3 times with 100 µl/well of PBS-Tween, after which 100 µl/well of a solution of anti-human IgG1 monoclonal antibody diluted 1000-fold with PBS-Tween is added to each well, and the plate is once again incubated at 37°C for 1 hour. The wells are then washed 3 times with 100 µl/well of PBS-Tween. 3,3',5,5'-Tetramethyl-benzidine (hereinafter referred to as "TMB") liquid substrate system (Sigma) is then added in an amount of 100 µl/well and the plate is allowed to stand at room temperature for 5 minutes and then the reaction stopped by adding 100 µl/well of 0.2N H_2SO_4. The absorbance of each well is read at 450 nm to estimate the concentration of the bound antibody, using the absorbance at 650 nm as the control reading. The absorbance is measured using a microplate reader (Molecular Devices). The production of DR5-IgG1 is confirmed using this ELISA method. The molecular weight of the expressed DR5-IgG1 fusion protein is determined using western blotting analysis in which anti-human IgG1 mAb (Sigma) is used to detect the antibody on the gel. The molecular

weight of the expressed DR5-IgG1 fusion protein has an approximate molecular weight of 50 kDa. The purity achieved being greater than 90% as evaluated by analysis on SDS-PAGE and detection of the protein by Coomassie blue staining.

Example 2. Generation of monoclonal antibodies against human DR5

2.1 Immunization

Female, Balb/c mice (Jackson Laboratory, Bar Harbor, ME) of 6-8 weeks of age, are immunized with the affinity-purified human DR5/hIgG1 fusion protein. For the initial foot-pad immunization, the fusion protein (50 μg) is emulsified in Freund's complete adjuvant (Difco, Detroit, MI). The mice are then boosted with four injections of 50 μg of fusion protein administered without adjuvant every other day. Three days after the last injection, lymphocytes from the local lymph nodes are fused with NS-1 myeloma cells, and the hybridomas are cultured in F104 media supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum. Positive hybridomas are selected by ELISA in which the plates are coated either with 1 μg/ml DR5/hIgG1 or the same amount of Fas/hIgG1 as a control. The isotype of the hybridomas is determined by ELISA using a panel of mouse Ig isotype-specific goat antibodies (Southern Biotechnology, Birmingham, AL). Monoclonal antibodies are purified by affinity chromatography using immobilized anti-mouse IgG1 or protein G (Sigma).

2.2 Cell fusion

On the third day after the booster injection, the local lymph nodes are removed from the mouse and placed into 10 ml of serum-free RPMI 1640 medium (GIBCO BRL) containing 50 units/ml penicillin, 50 μg/ml streptomycin, and 300 μg/ml L-glutamic acid, and disrupted by passing the organ through a mesh (Cell Strainer; Falcon) using a spatula. The resulting cell suspension is centrifuged to pellet the local lymph nodes cells which are then washed twice with serum-free RPMI medium. The washed cells are then resuspended in serum-free RPMI medium and counted.

In the meantime, myeloma NS1 cells (American Type Culture Collection TIB-18) had been grown to a cell density not exceeding 1 x 10^8 cells/ml in ASF104 medium (Ajinomoto, K. K.) containing 10% v/v FCS (Gibco BRL) ("ASF medium with serum") at 37°C under 5% v/v CO_2, and these are likewise disrupted, washed, resuspended and counted.

An amount of the NS1 cell suspension calculated to contain 3 x 10^7 cells is mixed with an amount of the spleen cell suspension calculated to contain 3 x 10^8 cells. The resulting mix is centrifuged and the supernatant discarded. The following steps of the cell fusion are performed whilst at all times keeping the plastic tube containing the pellet at 37°C in a beaker of warm water.

One ml of 50%(w/v) polyethylene glycol 1500 (Boehringer Manheim) is then slowly added to the tube, all the while stirring the pellet using the tip of a pipette. Subsequently, 1 ml of serum-free RPMI medium, prewarmed to 37°C, is slowly added in 2 portions, followed by the addition of a further 7 ml of serum-free RPMI medium. The resulting mix is then centrifuged, the supernatant discarded and 10 ml of HAT medium containing 10% v/v FCS are added while stirring gently with the tip of a pipette. A further 20 ml of HAT medium containing 10% v/v FCS is added, and the suspension is dispensed into 96-well cell culture microplates at 100 µl/well and incubated at 37°C in an atmosphere of 5% v/v CO_2. After 7 or 8 days, 100 µl/well of fresh HAT medium are used to replace medium in any wells exhibiting a yellowish hue. The fusion cells from these wells are cloned by limiting dilution as described below.

2.3 Cloning by limiting dilution

Thymuses from 4 to 10 week-old female BALB/c mice (from Japan SLC, Inc.) are removed, disrupted on a mesh (Cell Strainer; Falcon) as described above, and the disrupted cells are washed twice with HT medium containing 10% v/v FCS. An amount of thymus cells corresponding to those from one mouse is suspended in 30 ml of HT medium containing 10% v/v FCS to produce a feeder cell suspension. The fusion cell preparation obtained above in Example 2.2 is diluted with this feeder

cell suspension 10- to 100-fold, and further diluted serially with the feeder cell suspension to make suspensions having fusion cell densities of 5, 1 and 0.5 cells/ml. The thus prepared samples are dispensed into wells of 96-well cell culture microplates at 100 µl/well and incubated for 5 days at 37°C under 5% v/v CO_2.

2.4 Screening

The culture supernatants from the growing hybridomas are screened by ELISA using plates coated either with 1 µg/ml DR5/hIgG1 or the same amount of Fas/hIgG1 (41) as a control. The bound antibodies are detected using horseradish peroxidase (HRP)-conjugated anti-mouse immunoglobulins (Southern Biotechnology. Birmingham, AL) with TMB (Sigma, St Louis, MI) as the substrate. Purified DR5-IgG1 at a concentration of 1 µg/ml or the same amount of Fas-hIgG1 are introduced into a well of a 96-well ELISA/RIA STRIP PLATE (Costar, NY). The plate is kept standing at 4°C overnight to allow adsorption of the protein onto the well surface. After this time, the solution in the wells is discarded and each well is washed 3 times with PBS-Tween. Then, 100 µl of PBS containing 1% (w/v) bovine serum albumin (A3803; Sigma Chemicals Co.) is added to each well and the plate is incubated at 37°C for 1 hour. The wells are then washed a further 3 times with PBS-Tween, and then 50 µl of each culture supernatants from the growing hybridomas is added to each well. The plate is then incubated at 37°C for 1 hour, and the wells are again washed 4 times with PBS-Tween. After washing, 50 µl of horseradish peroxidase labeled goat anti-mouse immunoglobulin antibody (Southern Biotechnology. Birmingham, AL), diluted 1000-fold with PBS, is added per well, and the plate is again incubated at 37°C for 1 hour, after which the wells are washed 4 times with PBS-Tween. 3,3',5,5'-Tetramethyl-benzidine (TMB) liquid substrate system (Sigma) is then added in an amount of 100 µl/well and the plate is allowed to stand at room temperature for 5 minutes and then the reaction stopped by addition of 100 µl/well of 0.2N H_2SO_4. The absorbance of each well at 450 nm (control 650 nm) is measured using a microplate reader (Molecular Devices) and fusion cells are selected from the sample which had the absorbance (450 nm-650 nm, OD values; >

0.5) clearly higher than those to which no fusion cells supernatant had been added (OD values; ≈ 0.03). Furthermore, the culture supernatants from the growing hybridomas are also functionally screened by measuring the apoptosis-inducing activity using Jurkat cell. Fifty µl of RPMI medium containing Jurkat cells (1000 cells per well) and 5 uM Bisindolylmaleimide VIII (BisVIII, Alexis, San Diego, CA) are added in 96-well plates in the presence of 50 µl of the culture supernatants from the growing hybridomas. The cells are cultured in a humidified incubator at 37°C overnight. Apoptosis is determined by cell viability using the ATPLite kit as instructed by the manufacturer (Packard Instruments), and the samples are counted using the TopCounter (Packard Instruments).

2.5 ELISA binding of TRAIL and TRA-8 to the receptors

ELISA plates are coated with 2 µg/ml of DR4-Ig or DR5-Ig fusion protein overnight. After blocking with 3% BSA, the soluble TRAIL-FLAG or TRA-8 is added at indicated concentrations and incubated at 37°C for one hour. The binding of TRAIL or TRA-8 is detected by HRP-conjugated anti-Flag antibody (Alexis) or HRP-conjugated anti-murine IgG1 (Southern Biotechnology), respectively. The reactions are developed by TMB substrate buffer and measured by the Benchmark Microplate Reader (BioRad). The Kd values are estimated by the one-site binding model of non-linear regression using GraphPad Prism software (GraphPad Software, San Diego, CA). For competitive ELISA, 100 ng/ml TRAIL-FLAG is added and incubated in the presence of various concentrations of TRA-8. The binding of TRAIL is determined as above.

2.6 Cloning

The steps described in Examples 2.3 and 2.4 above are repeated 5 times for the cells selected in 2.4, thereby enabling the selection of several hybridoma clones each of which produced a single antibody that bound DR5-IgG but did not bind Fas-IgG. As a result of this selection procedure, a mouse-mouse hybridoma, designated TRA-8 and producing an antibody binding to DR5-IgG, but not Fas-IgG, is

obtained. This hybridoma, TRA-8, was deposited with the American Type Culture Collection on March 1, 2000, and has been assigned accession No. PTA-1428.

The subclass of the antibody produced by the mouse-mouse hybridoma TRA-8 (hereinafter referred to simply as "TRA-8") is demonstrated to be IgG1, κ, after testing with a monoclonal antibody isotyping kit (Pierce).

Using our human DR5-IgG1 fusion protein as immunogen, seven hybridoma clones are obtained by initial ELISA screening, all of which are strongly positive for DR5-IgG but not the Fas-IgG fusion protein, indicating that the obtained hybridomas produce antibodies that recognize the extracellular portion of DR5 but not the Fc portion of IgG1 (data not shown).

2.7 Western blot analysis

Filters for Western blot analysis of normal human and cancer tissue homogenates are purchased from Geno Technology (St Louis, MO). Each lane is loaded with an equal amount of protein as determined by an anti-β-actin antibody. The blots are probed with 1 μg/ml TRA-8 overnight, and followed by HRP-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG1 (Southern Biotechnology) at room temperature for one hour, and developed by chemiluminescence.

2.8 *In situ* immunohistochemistry

Human tissues are obtained from the Tissue Procurement Center of UAB. Frozen sections are fixed in 70% ethanol, blocked with 10% horse serum in PBS, and then incubated with 10 μg/ml of affinity-purified TRA-8 at room temperature for 60 minutes. The anti-mouse IgG ABC kit with diaminobenzidine (Vector, Burlingame, CA) as the colorimetric substrate is used to visualize the reactivity.

2.9 Analysis of caspase activation

Jurkat cells ($1x10^6$/ml) are incubated with 500 ng/ml TRA-8. Aliquots (30 μg of protein) of the cell lysate are separated on 15% SDS-PAGE, blotted onto a nylon membrane, and the blots are probed with anti-caspase 8, 9, and 3 antibodies (BD Pharmingen, San Diego, CA) followed by HRP-conjugated secondary antibody and chemiluminescence visualization of cleaved products. The caspase inhibitor set

is purchased from R&D Systems (Minneapolis, MN). Each caspase inhibitor is added into culture at indicated concentrations.

Example 3. Purification of TRA-8 Monoclonal Antibody

The mouse-mouse hybridoma, TRA-8, is grown to a cell density of 1×10^6 cells/ml by incubation in 500 ml of ASF medium, containing 10% v/v FCS, at 37°C under 5% v/v CO_2 for 5 days. The culture is then centrifuged (1,000 r.p.m., 5 minutes) and the supernatant collected. The purification of TRA-8 from the supernatant is achieved using ProteinG-Sepharose CL-4B affinity chromatography (Pharmacia) under the following conditions:

column: ProteinG-Sepharose CL-4B column (column size 2 ml; Pharmacia);

elution buffer: 0.1 M Glycine (pH 2.4), 0.15 M NaCl;

neutralization buffer: 1M Tris-HCl (pH 8.5).

After all of the supernatant is applied to column, 20 ml of PBS is washed three times and then elution buffer is added in 1 ml volumes for 10 times. The optical density of each eluted fraction (1 ml) is measured. The fractions from No. 2 to No. 5 ($> OD_{280} = 0.1$) are collected separately.

After adding 100 µl of neutralization buffer, the eluates are placed in dialysis tubing separately, and the eluates dialyzed against 1 liter of PBS (pH 7.5) at 4°C. The dialysis buffer being changed twice. This sample is assayed for anti-DR5 antibody activity by ELISA using the human DR5-IgG fusion protein prepared above using the technique described above.

Example 4. Preparation of DR4 antigen, DR4-IgG expression vector and anti-DR4 monoclonal antibody

The procedures of Examples 1-3 are repeated with DR4 template cDNA and primers in place of those detailed in Example 1 to obtain a DR4 antigen which is utilized as per Examples 1.2-3 to obtain a monoclonal antibody specific against DR4.

Example 5. Monoclonal antibodies against DcR1 and DcR2

Monoclonal antibodies are raised against decoy receptors DcR1 and DcR2 by substituting the corresponding cDNA and primers to create the respective antigens as per Example 1. Expression vectors for DcR1 or DcR2-fusions with immune globulin G and resulting purified monoclonal antibodies are created as per Examples 2 and 3.

Example 6. The specificity of a monoclonal antibody

As all of the receptors for TRAIL and other proteins of the TNFR family share significant homology, the specificity of exemplary antibody TRA-8 for DR5 is determined by western blot analysis using two different human DR5-IgG fusion proteins and soluble, recombinant forms of other related proteins. A first DR5-Ig fusion protein is constructed by fusing cDNA from residues 1-180 of the extracellular portion of DR5 and cDNA encoding the constant region of human IgG1. The fused cDNA is cloned into a recombinant adenoviral vector (Quantum Biotechnogies, Inc., Montreal, Canada). The expressed DR5/hIgG1 fusion protein, which had a relative molecular weight of 50 kDa, is purified using an anti-human IgG affinity column (Sigma, St Louis, MO). For western blot analysis of specificity, a second recombinant human DR5/IgG1 fusion protein (aa. 52-212), as well as TRAIL-R1, R3 and R4 fusion proteins, are purchased from Alexis. The soluble forms of human Fas and TNFR1 are kindly provided by Dr. Carl Edwards of Amgen, Inc., Thousands Oaks, CA, USA. The soluble recombinant human DR4, DcR1, DcR2, TNFR1, R4, and Fas molecules used are human IgG1 fusion proteins. 0.5 μg of each protein is separated by 10% SDS-PAGE and blotted onto a nitrocellulose membrane. The blots are blocked with 5% dry milk in PBS at room temperature for one hour, and probed with 1 μg/ml of purified monoclonal anti-DR5 antibody (clone: TRA-8) or 0.1 μg/ml of HRP-conjugated goat anti-human IgG at 4°C overnight. Horseradish-peroxidase (HRP)-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG is used as secondary antibody to detect bound TRA-8. The blots are developed by chemiluminescence.

Cos-7 cells transfected with the pcDNA3 vector (Clontech, Palo Alto, CA) containing the full-length DR5 or DR4 or empty vector are used for flow cytometry analysis. The full-length cDNA encoding human TRAIL or murine Fas ligand is cloned into the pTRE vector down-stream of the tetracycline-controllable promoter (Clontech). The XhoI-HindIII fragments of pTRE-hTRAIL or pTRE-mFasL are further cloned into the adenoviral shuttle vector pAdBN (Quantum Biotechnologies, Inc.). The 293 host cells are co-transfected with the linearized pAd-TRE-hTRAIL or pAd-TRE-mFasL and the large fragment DNA of adenovirus. The expression of functional human TRAIL or murine Fas ligand from the recombinant virus plaques is screened using a ^{51}Cr-release assay with Jurkat as the targets.

TRA-8 reacted strongly with the DR5-IgG fusion protein (~50 kDa), which is used for immunization as shown in Figure 1a, DR5, #1, and weakly with the second DR5-IgG fusion protein (~60 kD) as shown in Figure 1a, DR5, #2. There is no significant binding of TRA-8 to DR4, DcR1, DcR2, Fas (CD95) or TNFRI. These results indicate that TRA-8 recognizes the epitopes that are specific for DR5 but not shared by the other members of the family.

TRA-8 does not react with other members of the TNF receptor superfamily, such as Fas (CD95) and TNF receptor I, nor does TRA-8 cross-react with the murine homologue of DR5 as shown by optical absorbance ratios for 450 nm and 650 nm, wherein lower panel numbers 1-7 (Fig. 1a, the column 8 of lower panel). Soluble TRAIL and TRA-8 bound comparably to immobilized DR5 (Fig. 1b, left panel). In contrast, TRAIL bound to DR4, but TRA-8 did not exhibit any binding activity to DR4 (Fig. 1b, middle panel). The Kd values for the binding of TRAIL and TRA-8 to DR5 are estimated at 59 nM and 3 nM, respectively. Importantly, TRA-8 efficiently competing with TRAIL for binding to DR5 but not for binding to DR4, as shown in competitive ELISA (Fig. 1b, right panel). These results establish the specificity of TRA-8 for human DR5.

TRA-8 is able to detect cell surface expression of DR5, with flow cytometric analysis indicating specific binding to the cell surface of Cos-7 cells transfected with

full-length human DR5, but not of Cos-7 cells transfected with DR4 or empty vector (Fig. 1c). Similarly, *in situ* immunohistochemistry with TRA-8 demonstrated reactivity with Cos-7 cells transfected with full-length DR5 DNA but not with those transfected with control vector (Fig. 1d). TRA-8 does not induce apoptosis of untransfected Cos-7 cells, and RT-PCR of RNA from Cos-7 cells using paired primers encoding human DR5 showed that no specific PCR products. Further functional analysis using human Jurkat cells as targets showed that, in the absence of crosslinking, TRA-8 strongly induces cell death, demonstrated by three different assays for cell viability including ATPLite, MTT and PI exclusion (Fig. 1e). Greater than 50% of Jurkat cells are killed by nanogram levels of TRA-8 as shown by ATPLite assay. The killing activity of TRA-8 is specific for DR5 as it could be blocked by DR5-Ig but not DR4-Ig fusion protein (data not shown). Cleavage of caspases 8, 9, and 3 could be detected by western blot analysis as early as 30 minutes after TRA-8 treatment of Jurkat cells (Fig. 1f), and cell death of Jurkat cells is completely inhibited by the general caspase inhibitor (Z-VAD) (Fig. 1g). Individual caspase inhibitors for caspase 8, 3, 9, and 10 partially inhibited cell death, further indicating that TRA-8-mediated cell death is primarily through a caspase-dependent apoptotic mechanism.

Example 7. Flow cytometric analysis of the expression of cell surface DR5: A major death receptor on many tumor cells but not on normal cells

The ability of TRA-8 to bind DR5 expressed on the cell surface and the specificity of this reaction is then assessed using COS-7 (American Type Culture Collection No. CRL-1651) cells transfected with the expression vector containing the full-length human DR5 or DR4 cDNA or empty vector as control. Phycoerythrin (PE)-conjugated anti-mouse IgG1 (Pharmingen) is used as the second antibody to detect the bound TRA-8. The fluorescence of 1 X 10^4 cells is measured, using a flow cytometer (FACSVantage) under the following conditions:

Excitation wave length: 488 nm;

Detection wave length; 600 nm.

Flow cytometry analysis showed that TRA-8 stained approximately 30% of COS-7 cells transfected with the DR5 vector as shown in the solid histogram of Figure 1c. This percentage parallels the transfection efficiency as determined by analysis of transfection using green fluorescent protein (GFP) (data not shown). TRA-8 did not significantly stain cells transfected with either DR4 (the open histogram) or control vector (the dotted histogram), indicating that TRA-8 is specific for cell surface DR5.

Although DR5 expression in tumor cells has been studied extensively at the mRNA level (REFERENCE please insert), the surface expression of DR5 has not been documented. Thus, the availability of monoclonal anti-DR5 antibody allows us to examine the surface levels of DR5, and to correlate the expression with the susceptibility of the cells to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis. The following panel of cells (1×10^6) is incubated with 10 μg/ml of affinity purified TRA-8 at room temperature for 30 min, and then stained with PE-conjugated anti-mouse IgG1 (Pharmingen) for another 30 min. 10,000 viable cells are analyzed using the FACS vantage flow cytometer under the following conditions:

Excitation wave length: 488 nm;

Detection wave length: 600 nm.

The five hematopoietic cell lines tested are Jurkat, CEM-6, Molt-4, H-9 and U937 cells. DR5 expression is detectable on the surface of Jurkat, CEM-6, H-9, and U937 cells but is almost undetectable on Molt-4 cells as shown in Figure 2a and 2a'. Although high levels of DR5 RNA expression has been described previously (43), the FACs analysis indicated that these cells do not express high levels of the surface DR5. These results indicate that cell surface expression of DR5 does not correlate with the transcriptional expression of DR5, which is not unexpected for such a receptor. The level of cell surface expression of DR5 may be cell lineage-specific since most of the cells of hematopoietic origin expressed low levels whereas most glioma and prostate cells expressed high levels of DR5.

TRA-8 monoclonal antibody is used determine the role of DR5 in induction of TRAIL-mediated apoptosis by examining its cell surface expression among a panel of different types of human tumor cells as well as the susceptibility of these cells to both TRAIL and TRA-8-mediated apoptosis. Primary peripheral blood T cells did not express significant levels of cell surface DR5 and are resistant to both TRAIL and TRA-8-mediated apoptosis (Figs. 2*a*, 2*a'* and 3*a'*). Although all five of the human T-leukemia cell lines tested expressed detectable albeit relatively low levels of cell surface DR5, two of them (Jurkat and CEM-6) are highly susceptible to both TRAIL-mediated and TRA-8-mediated apoptosis, indicating that DR5 alone is sufficient to induce apoptosis of these cells. Molt-4 and U937 cells are partially susceptible to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis but are relatively resistant to TRA-8-mediated apoptosis, suggesting that other TRAIL receptors might be involved in transduction of an apoptosis signal. H-9 cells are resistant to both TRAIL and TRA-8-mediated apoptosis, implicating a block mediated by an intracellular anti-apoptosis pathway.

The panel of cells included the human malignant glioma cell lines, Hs683, U251MG, D37MG, D54MG, U373MG, CH235MG, U87 and normal human astrocytes, which were provided by Dr. Yancey Gillespie of the Neurosurgery Department of the University of Alabama at Birmingham. The human prostate cancer cell lines, Du154, PC3 and LnCap, were provided by Dr. William Grizzle of the Pathology Department of the University of Alabama at Birmingham who had obtained the cell lines from the American Type Culture Collection. The human leukemia T cell lines, B-cell lymphoma, HepG2 Jurkat (American Type Culture Collection TIB-152) and CCRF-CEM CEM-6 (American Type Culture Collection CCL-119); monocyte cell lines, U937 (American Type Culture Collection CRL-2367); were purchased from the American Type Culture Collection. All above cell lines are cultured in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% FCS. The human astrocytoma cell line, 1321N1, was kindly provided by Dr. Richard Jope of

Psychiatry Department of the University of Alabama at Birmingham, and cultured in DMEM supplemented with 5% FCS.

Soluble recombinant human TRAIL, purchased from Alexis Corporation (San Diego, CA), is a fusion protein comprised of the extracellular domain of human TRAIL (aa residues 95 to 281) fused at N-terminus to a FLAF-tag and an 8 amino acid linker peptide. Unlike previously reported His-tagged TRAIL, this preparation of TRAIL alone does not induce a strong apoptotic response in Jurkat cells and requires an anti-FLAG antibody as a crosslinker to enhance apoptosis. The anti-FLAG antibody was also purchased from Alexis.

All of the 10 human malignant glioma cells tested expressed detectable levels of DR5 at the cell surface. Most expressed intermediate to high levels of DR5 as shown in Figure 2b. Three lines, D-54MG, U373MG and CH-235MG expressed high levels of DR5 while six lines, Hs-683, U251-MG, D37-MG, U87, SMK1 and 1321N1, expressed intermediate levels of DR5. Only one cell line, H-465 expressed low levels of DR5. All three prostate cancer cell lines expressed high levels of DR5 as shown in Figure 2c.

Like the normal primary T cells, primary B cells did not express significant levels of DR5 and did not undergo apoptosis after treatment with either TRAIL or TRA-8 (Fig. 2*d*). Three (SKW6.4, EB-3, and Raji) out of the four B lymphoma cell lines tested expressed relatively high levels of DR5 and are very susceptible to both TRAIL and TRA-8-mediated apoptosis. The fourth cell line, Daudi, expressed very low levels of DR5 and is much less susceptible to either TRAIL or TRA-8-mediated apoptosis. Although primary astrocytes did not express detectable levels of cell surface DR5 (Fig. 2*b'*), all four glioma cell lines tested expressed high levels of DR5. The higher level of expression of DR5 on glioma cells than on T and B cells is not accompanied by a significantly greater susceptibility to TRAIL and DR5-mediated apoptosis, suggesting that the level of cell surface expression of DR5 is not necessarily correlated with the level of apoptosis of tumor cells. RT-PCR, performed to determine message levels of DR4, DR5 and DCR2, detected message

in all cells tested (Table 1). However, in general, primary normal cells expressed relatively low levels of DR5 compared to transformed tumor cells.

Table 1: RT-PCR analysis of TRAIL receptor expression*

Cells	DR5	DR4	DcR2
Primary T cells	<0.001	<0.001	0.015
Jurkat	0.10	<0.001	0.21
CEM-6	0.50	0.59	0.25
Molt-4	0.10	<0.001	0.05
H-9	0.73	0.61	0.07
Primary B cells	<0.001	<0.001	0.024
SKW6.4	0.95	0.66	0.45
EB3	0.40	<0.001	0.35
Raji	0.55	0.11	0.45
Daudi	0.73	0.36	0.63
Normal Astrocytes	0.05	<0.001	0.12
SH683	0.56	0.96	0.14
U87	0.44	0.56	0.21
D54	1.15	0.46	0.12
1321N1	0.25	0.35	0.05

* Total RNA was isolated from cells and RT-PCR was performed as described in Methods. The PCR products were separated in 3% agarose gel and analyzed by the Fluor-S MAX MultiImager System (BioRad). The values are presented as a ratio relative to β-actin.

Example 8. Induction of apoptosis in vitro in malignant cells

To determine whether TRA-8 induces apoptosis in transformed cells *in vitro*, all DR5-positive tumor cells are examined for their susceptibility to apoptosis induced either by TRA-8 or TRAIL.

Target cells (1×10^3 per well) are cultured in 96-well plates in the presence of the indicated concentrations of soluble TRAIL plus crosslinker (Alexis) or TRA-8 at 37°C overnight. Cell viability is determined using (1) the ATPLite kit according to the manufacturer's instructions (Packard Instruments, Meriden, CT); (2) the MTT Cell proliferation/viability kit (Sigma); or (3) PI staining of dead cells and analyzed by flow cytometry. At end of culture, cells are stained with 10 μg/ml PI and PI

negative cells are gated as viable cells. For analysis of condensed nuclei of hepatocytes, cells are stained with 10 ng/ml Hoechst 33352 (Molecular Probes) and analyzed by flow cytometry.

The TRA-8 antibody is capable of inducing apoptosis in the majority of the malignant human glioma cell lines (9/10), in 2 of the 3 prostate cancer cell lines, and in 2 of the 4 DR5-positive hematopoietic cell lines. It did not induce apoptosis in the Molt-4 cell line, which expressed almost undetectable cell surface levels of DR5. The levels of susceptibility of the cells to TRA-8-mediated apoptosis varied considerably among the cell lines, however.

The variability of the susceptibility of the cells to TRA-8 antibody induced apoptosis suggests that although a minimal level of cell surface expression of DR5 is required, the level of cell surface expression of DR5 is not necessarily the primary determinant of susceptibility and other factors influence this process. Although all of the glioma cells generally expressed significantly higher levels of the surface DR5 than did the hematopoietic cells, glioma cell susceptibility to apoptosis induced by TRA-8 is not proportionally increased compared to the hematopoietic cells. The susceptibility of five of the glioma cell lines, D-37MG, D54-MG, U373-MG, CH235-MG and 1321N1 to TRA-8-induced apoptosis is high and is equivalent to their susceptibility to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis as shown in Figure 3b. Two of the glioma cell lines, H-456 and SMK1, are much less susceptible to apoptosis induced by TRA-8. In the case of the H-456 cells, the surface expression of DR5 is low; however, the surface expression of DR5 on SMK1 is similar to the more susceptible cell lines, suggesting that other mechanisms might play a role in the determining the susceptibility to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis. Although all three prostate cancer cell lines expressed high levels of DR5, the Du145 cells are most sensitive to TRA-8-induced apoptosis, the PC3 cells are partially sensitive while LnCAP cells are completely resistant as shown in Figure 3c. Among the hematopoietic cells, it is found that Jurkat and CEM-6 are very susceptible to TRA-8- apoptosis as shown in Figure 2a although both these cell lines had been found to express low levels of

DR5. Although DR5 is detectable on U937 cells, these cells are resistant to TRA-8-induced apoptosis. Similarly, although the H-9 cells expressed detectable levels of DR5, H-9 cells are resistant to apoptosis induced by TRA-8. These results implicated the existence of regulatory mechanisms that influence DR5-mediated apoptosis.

Additional surface binding anti-DR5 antibodies are produced as per the procedures of Examples 1-3. Two additional anti-DR5 antibodies designated TRA-1 and TRA-10 are studied along with TRA-8 to determine comparative ability induce apoptosis and thereby act as an agonist or conversely block TRAIL-mediated apoptosis, thereby acting as an antagonist. Human Jurkat cells are used as a target to determine the agonist and/or antagonist activity of the three anti-DR5 antibodies denoted TRA-1, TRA-8 and TRA-10. As shown in Figure 4, cell viability is about 90%, 70% and 20% for TRA-10, TRA-1 and TRA-8, respectively upon overnight incubation with 2.5 μg per ml. TRA-8 induced a strong apoptotic response in a dose dependent fashion while TRA-1 induced only a moderate apoptotic response and TRA-10 only induced a weak response. TRA-8 is therefore classified as an agonist anti-DR5 antibody. In Figure 4, the viability of human Jurkat cells is shown as a dose dependent function of TRAIL-induced apoptosis. TRA-10 blocked apoptosis of human Jurkat cells to a significant extent in a low dose TRAIL-induced apoptosis study. Thus, TRA-10 is classified as an antagonist anti-DR5 antibody.

The susceptibility of five of the glioma cell lines, D-37MG, D54-MG, U373-MG, CH235-MG and 1321N1 to TRA-8-induced apoptosis is equivalent to their susceptibility to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis as shown in Figure 3b, indicating that TRAIL-induced apoptosis in these cells is mediated primarily through DR5. Moreover, two of the glioma cell lines, Hs683 and U251-MG, are resistant to TRAIL-induced apoptosis but partially sensitive to TRA-8-induced apoptosis, indicating that the decoy receptors function in these cells and that use of the TRA-8 antibody bypassed this regulatory mechanism. In the prostate cancer cell lines, despite the varying sensitivity to apoptosis induced by TRA-8, this paralleled the

sensitivity of the cells to apoptosis induced by TRAIL, again suggesting that DR5 plays a major role of TRAIL-mediated apoptosis in the prostate cancer cells. Among the hematopoietic cells, it is found that Jurkat and CEM-6 are very susceptible to both TRA-8 and TRAIL-mediated apoptosis. The level of apoptosis induced by TRA-8 is comparable to that induced by TRAIL as shown in Figures 2a and 3a'. Only one of the glioma cell lines, U87, and two hematopoietic cell lines, U937 and Molt-4, exhibited sensitivity to TRAIL-induced apoptosis but are less sensitive or resistant to TRA-8-induced apoptosis. One cell line, the H-9 cell line, expressed detectable levels of DR5 but are resistant to apoptosis induced by either TRA-8 or TRAIL. While minimal levels of expression of DR5 are required for TRA-8-induced apoptosis, the level of expression of DR5 does not necessarily predict the susceptibility of the cells to TRA-8 mediated apoptosis; decoy receptors play a role in modulating TRAIL-mediated apoptosis in some cells, but does not appear to play a major role in most of the cells tested to date; as anticipated the TRA-8 antibody bypasses the effects of the decoy receptors; functional mutations of the DR5 receptor may occur in transformed cells; and, finally, intracellular regulatory mechanisms may be as important, or more important than the decoy receptors in defining the susceptibility of the cells to TRAIL and DR5-mediated apoptosis.

Previous studies have shown that the mRNA for DR5 is distributed widely in normal tissues[7]. To evaluate the expression of DR5 at the protein level, a panel of normal human tissue homogenates (Geno Technology, St. Louis, MO) is probed with the TRA-8 antibody in western blot analysis. Among nine normal human tissues, brain tissue is weakly positive (Fig. 5*a*, lane 2). DR5 protein is not detectable by TRA-8 reactivity in liver (lane 1), lung (lane 3), kidney (lane 4), spleen (lane 5), testes (lane 6), ovary (lane 7), heart (lane 8), or pancreas (lane 9). In contrast, all thirteen human cancer tissues stained positively with TRA-8 (Fig. 5*b*), including cancers of the ovary (lane 1), lung (lane 2), liver (lane 3), rectum (lane 4), cervix (lane 5), skin (lane 6), testes (lane 7), thyroid (lane 8), uterus (lane 10),

stomach (lane 11), laryngopharynx (lane 12), and pancreas (lane 13). Moreover, *in situ* immunohistochemistry of normal and cancer tissues with TRA-8 confirmed that aside from a few scattered positive cells in spleen, DR5 expression in normal breast, lung and spleen tissues is not detectable (Fig. 5*c*). The corresponding cancer tissues including breast infiltrating ductal carcinoma, small cell lung cancer, and lymphoma reacted positively with TRA-8 (Fig. 5*d*). Among a total of 22 cancer tissues examined, 5 of 6 breast cancers, 2 of 2 cancers of the cervix, 4 of 5 liver cancers, 5 of 8 lymphomas, 2 of 2 lung cancers, and 2 of 2 prostate cancers reacted positively with TRA-8. These results are consistent with those of the flow cytometry analysis and indicate that cancerous tissues express higher levels of DR5 protein than do normal tissues.

Example 9. Tumoricidal activity of TRA-8 *in vivo*

For various reasons, many agents that show promise in *in vitro* studies do not show efficacy *in vivo*. It is therefore important to test the efficacy of TRA-8 in an *in vivo* animal model. To accomplish this the TRA-8 anti-human DR5 antibody is administered to mice bearing human xenografts that express the human DR5 molecule. The mice used are 6 to 8 week-old NOD/SCID mice (Jackson Laboratory), which are inoculated subcutaneously with human astrocytoma 1321N1 cells ($1x10^7$), or inoculated intravenously with human leukemia Jurkat cells ($1x10^6$). At day 2 after tumor inoculation, mice are inoculated intravenously with TRA-8 (100 μg). Five days after the treatment with TRA-8, 1321N1 tumor growth is determined by the size and weight of the tumor mass. The growth of Jurkat cells is determined by the weight of the spleen and the percentage of human CD3-positive Jurkat cells in the spleen of inoculated animals. Biopsies of tumor tissues are taken and examined histologically.

Early treatment with a single intravenous dose of 100 μg of TRA-8 at one day after tumor inoculation completely inhibited the 1321N1 cells from forming a solid tumor of (Fig. 6*a*). Late treatment with three doses of 100 μg TRA-8 at one week after tumor inoculation reduced tumor weight 4-fold or more (Fig. 6*b*). Tumor

formation is not visible in animals treated with TRA-8 at an early time point (Fig. 6*c*, upper panel). Histologic analysis revealed dramatically degenerated tumor tissue in animals treated with TRA-8 (Fig. 6*c*, lower panel). Similarly, TRA-8 treatment inhibited population of the spleen by Jurkat cells as demonstrated by the scarcity of CD3-positive Jurkat cells in the spleen (Fig. 6*d*, 6*e*). Histological analysis of the implanted tumor showed a few tumor cells scattered in the soft tissue in TRA-8-treated animals while controls showed the formation of a solid tumor as shown in Figure 6c. In the Jurkat cell model, the number of Jurkat cells in the spleens of TRA-8 treated animals is less than 2% compared to nearly 10% in the spleen of control animals as demonstrated by flow cytometry analysis as shown in Figure 6a and in situ CD3 staining of Figure 6c.

These results confirm the recent demonstration that systemic administration of cross-linked recombinant TRAIL inhibits growth of tumor *in vivo* (13). These results indicate that a single dose of TRA-8 is highly effective in the elimination of tumor cells *in vivo*.

As an anti-human antibody is used in a murine model, the toxicity of the TRA-8 treatment could not be assessed. However, the study of administration of TRAIL *in vivo* indicated that no significant toxicity is associated with this treatment (13).

Example 10. RA synovial cells are susceptible to TRAIL and TRA-8-induced apoptosis

Most of the prior art studies of TRAIL-mediated apoptosis have focused on malignant cells. TRAIL-mediated apoptosis according to the present invention is also therapeutic in autoimmune and inflammatory conditions, such as RA.

10.1 Flow cytometric analysis of the expression of cell surface DR5 in RA synovial cells

The expression of DR5 on a panel of eight primary cultured synovial cells from patients with RA is compared with that on eight primary cultured synovial cells from patients with osteoarthritis (hereinafter referred to as "OA"). The eight

human primary RA synovial cell cultures RA-1014, RA-1016, RA-1021, RA-512, RA-707, RA-811, RA-716, and RA-929 are kindly provided by Dr. M. Ohtsuki (Sankyo Co. Ltd., Tokyo, Japan) and cultured in DMEM supplemented with 10% FCS, penicillin, streptomycin, and glutamine. The seven OA synovial cell primary cell cultures are isolated from the synovial tissues of OA patients by a standard collagenase method and cultured under the same conditions. The passage number of all primary cells is under 10. The expression of DR5 is determined by FACs analysis as described in Example 5.

All of the primary cultures of RA cells expressed high levels of surface DR5, and there is little variation in the expression levels among these synovial cells isolated from different patients as shown in Figure 7a. In contrast, the expression of surface DR5 on the surface of synovial cells isolated from the OA patients is very low or undetectable as per Figure 7b. SV40-transformed synovial cell are found to express high levels of DR5 comparable with those exhibited by the RA cells. In contrast, non-transformed fibroblast cells expressed low levels of DR5 comparable to those exhibited by the OA cells in Figure 7b.

10.2 Susceptibility of RA synovial cells to apoptosis mediated by TRA-8 or TRAIL

In general, all synovial cells isolated from the RA patients are susceptible to both TRAIL and anti-DR5 antibody induced apoptosis, and all OA cells are resistant to TRAIL and anti-DR5 antibody induced apoptosis as per Figure 8a, b. These studies indicate that the TRA-8 antibody targets altered cells in preference to normal cells. Moreover, the pattern of the susceptibility or resistance to apoptosis induced by TRAIL is correlated with that induced by anti-DR5 antibody, indicating that the synovial cells primarily utilize DR5 to trigger TRAIL apoptosis.

As described for the malignant cells, the susceptibility to apoptosis induced by TRAIL or anti-DR5 antibody varied among the RA synovial cells although expressing similar levels of DR5. RA-512 and RA-707 are the most susceptible as over 80% cells are killed by concentrations of TRAIL or TRA-8 below 20 ng/ml.

RA-1014, RA-811, RA-716, and RA929 are among those with the intermediate susceptibility to TRAIL or TRA-8, with nearly 100% cell death occurring in the presence of high concentrations (>50 ng/ml) of TRAIL or TRA-8. In RA-1016 and RA1021 cells, although the majority (over 60%) of cells are killed by a low dose of TRAIL or TRA-8, a portion of cells survived in the presence of high concentrations of TRAIL or TRA-8, indicating that a sub-population of cells are resistant to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis. In contrast, all OA cells are much less susceptible to TRAIL and TRA-8 induced apoptosis. No greater than 60% cells are killed in the OA52F and OA69F even in the presence of high concentration of TRAIL or TRA-8. OA72M cells are completely resistant to TRAIL or TRA-8 induced apoptosis. The SV40 transformed synovial cells are also susceptible to TRAIL and TRA-8 induced apoptosis (data not shown). In contrast, the non-transformed fibroblast cells appeared to be resistant to TRAIL and TRA-8.

It has been shown previously that DR5 utilizes a FADD/caspase 8 dependent pathway to trigger apoptosis (44). To determine the caspase-dependence of DR5-mediated apoptosis of RA synovial cells, RA cells are cultured with TRAIL or anti-DR5 antibody in the presence of specific caspase inhibitors. Among eight caspase inhibitors tested, caspase 6, 8 and 10 inhibitors are able to inhibit apoptosis of RA synovial cells induced by both TRAIL and DR5 as shown in Figure 9, indicating that these three caspases are involved in DR5-mediated apoptosis.

10.3 TRA-8 or TRAIL induce NF-κb activation in RA synovial cells without increased release of MMPs

There is considerable evidence to support the concept that there are close links between the signaling of apoptosis and the signaling of proliferation (45). It has been established that DR5 is able to activate a NF-kb pathway in addition to apoptosis signaling transduction, and that NF-κb activation may be able to transduce an anti-apoptosis signal. Therefore a gel-shift assay is carried out. Cells are stimulated with 50 ng/ml of the recombinant soluble TRAIL, Fas ligand in the presence of the 1 mg/ml enhancer, or 50 ng/ml of TRA-8 for the indicated time. The

nuclear extracts are prepared and incubated with the double-stained [^{32}P]-labeled oligo-DNA probe. The results are analyzed using the cyclone phospha-imager (TopCount NXT, Packard Instrument Company, CT). After RA synovial cells are incubated with TNF-α or TRAIL, NF-κb is activated in a time-dependent fashion. The TRA-8 antibody is able to strongly activate NF-κb. In contrast, Fas ligand is unable to induce NF-κb activation as per Figure 10a.

Thus, although TRAIL and TRA-8 antibody induce a strong apoptosis response in RA synovial cells, they also activate NF-κb, and NF-κb activation has been believed to contribute to the proinflammatory role of TNF-α in RA. Thus, it is possible that TRAIL, like TNF-α, may serve as a pro-inflammatory cytokine. To determine whether there is a similar biological consequence of NF-kb activation induced by TRAIL and TNF-α, the production of MMPs is determined by ELISA. Synovial cells are cultured in medium alone or with 50 ng/ml interleukin 1b, 10 ng/ml TNF-a, 50 ng/ml TRAIL, or 50 ng/ml TRA-8 overnight. The levels of the MMP-1 and MMP-3 in the culture supernatants are determined by the ELISA kits.

When RA synovial cells are incubated with a proinflammatory cytokine, TNF-α or IL-1b, the production of MMP-1, 3, and 13 is increased compared to the medium control as shown in Figure 10 b,c. In contrast, treatment with TRAIL or anti-DR5 antibody is not associated with increased release of these MMPs.

Example 11A. Failure to induce hepatocellular toxicity

For 24-hour cell viability assays, fresh normal human hepatocytes in 96-well plates were purchased from In Vitro Technology (Baltimore, MD). The hepatocytes are cultured in the Hepatocyte Culture Medium containing 1 μg/ml of either soluble TRAIL or TRA-8. For 6-hour viability assays, normal hepatocytes or hepatocellular cancer cells are isolated from fresh surgical specimens collected from UAB Tissue Procurement Center. All reagents for isolation of human hepatocytes including hepatocytes perfusion buffer, digest medium, washing medium, and attachment medium were purchased from Gibco. The tissue slides are digested in the

Hepatocyte Digest Medium at 37°C with shaking (50 rpm) for one hour. The isolated hepatocytes are harvested by low speed centrifugation (50 g, 3 min), and washed with the Hepatocyte Washing Medium six times. Single cell suspension of hepatocytes are cultured in the Attachment Medium containing 10% FCS in 96-well Matrigel plates (BD) for six hours. Non-attached hepatocytes are removed by twice washing with pre-warmed attachment medium. Attached hepatocytes are further incubated with various concentrations of soluble TRAIL or FasL in the presence of crosslinker, or TRA-8 or CH11 for 6 hours.

TRAIL has at least two receptors (DR4 and DR5) that are capable of inducing apoptosis. TRA-8 is used to determine whether crosslinking of DR5 alone is sufficient to induce apoptosis of normal hepatocytes. DR5 expression at the protein level is examined initially in five normal human liver tissues and five liver cancer tissues by *in situ* immunohistochemistry using TRA-8. Sections from the normal liver tissues showed normal architecture and cell morphology on H&E staining (Fig. 11*a*, left upper panels) in the absence of positive reactivity with TRA-8 for DR5 (Fig. 11*a*, left lower panels). In contrast, the human hepatocellular carcinoma tissue reacted positively with TRA-8 in a pattern consistent with both cell membrane and cytoplasmic presence of DR5 on the cancerous cells. The human hepatocellular carcinoma cell line HepG2 is also positive for DR5. These results are consistent among the five normal liver tissues, and only one (liver adenoma) out of five liver cancer tissues is DR5-negative. These results are consistent with the Western blot data, shown in Figure 5a, that, as with other normal tissues, normal human liver tissue does not express significant levels of DR5 protein. Furthermore, Western blot analysis of isolated, normal human hepatocytes probed with TRA-8 does not reveal detectable levels of DR5.

Cell surface expression of DR5 on human hepatocytes by flow cytometry analysis demonstrated that freshly prepared normal hepatocytes did not express detectable levels of cell surface DR5 (Fig. 11*b*, top left panels). Neither is it detected on normal human hepatocytes that had been cryopreserved or placed in

short-term culture. In contrast, freshly isolated hepatocellular carcinoma cells as well as HepG2 cells express cell surface DR5. Using Fas as a comparison, the normal hepatocytes, hepatocellular carcinoma cells, and HepG2 cells all expressed equivalent levels of Fas (Fig. 11*b*, lower panels). These results are consistent with those obtained using *in situ* immunohistochemistry and Western blot and indicate that cell surface DR5 is highly expressed in cancerous liver cells but not normal hepatocytes. The presence of mRNA levels for DR4, DR5, DcR1 and DcR2 in human hepatocytes, demonstrated by RT-PCR[23], suggests that human hepatocytes might express very low levels of DR5 protein that are below the threshold for detection by TRA-8.

To determine whether TRA-8 induces hepatocellular toxicity, the susceptibility of normal human hepatocytes to apoptosis induced by TRA-8 and by soluble TRAIL plus crosslinker is examined. When normal hepatocytes are cultured in the presence of a high concentration of TRAIL, a time-dependent decrease in cell viability is observed by ATPLite (Fig. 12a) and MTT assays. TRAIL-mediated cell death of normal hepatocytes could be seen as early as four hours after addition of TRAIL. At end of a 24-hour culture, more than 80% of the hepatocytes are killed by TRAIL. In contrast, during the same culture period, TRA-8 did not induce significant cell death in normal hepatocytes. The condensed nuclei stained with Hoechst, a characteristic of apoptosis, are increased in TRAIL-treated but not TRA-8-treated hepatocytes (Fig. 12b). The number of apoptotic hepatocytes is well correlated with decreased cell viability as determined by ATPLite assay, suggesting that TRAIL-induced cell death of hepatocytes is mediated by apoptosis. This is confirmed by the ability of Z-VAD to inhibit TRAIL-mediated toxicity of hepatocytes. As cycloheximide is a potent apoptosis enhancer, the effect of this compound on TRAIL and TRA-8-treated hepatocytes is investigated. During a four-hour culture, cycloheximide significantly enhanced the cell death of hepatocytes induced by TRAIL, with greater than 70% hepatocytes being killed by TRAIL in the presence of cycloheximide (Fig. 12c). However, cycloheximide treatment is unable

to enhance TRA-8-mediated cell death in hepatocytes. To compare the characteristics of apoptosis induced by TRA-8 with that induced by TRAIL in hepatocytes, normal hepatocytes as well as cancer cells are incubated with variable concentrations of soluble TRAIL with crosslinker or TRA-8. During a 6-hour culture period, TRAIL induced a moderate apoptotic response in normal hepatocytes. Over 20% of hepatocytes are killed in the presence of 500 ng/ml TRAIL (Fig. 12*d*, upper left). TRA-8-treatment of normal hepatocytes did not elicit any significant cell death over the same time period. In contrast to normal hepatocytes, primary hepatocellular carcinoma cells (Fig. 12*d*, upper middle) and HepG2 cells (Fig. 12*d*, upper right) are highly susceptible to apoptosis mediated by either TRAIL or TRA-8. Over 80% of hepatocellular carcinoma cells and nearly 100% of HepG2 cells are killed during the 8-hour culture period. These results indicate that normal hepatocytes are completely resistant to TRA-8-mediated apoptosis, and are much less susceptible to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis than are liver cancer cells. Using Fas ligand and anti-Fas antibody (CH-11), there is no significant difference in the susceptibility to Fas-mediated apoptosis among normal hepatocytes, hepatocellular carcinoma cells, and HepG2 cells (Fig. 12*d*, lower panels).

Comparative Example 11B. Human membrane-bound TRAIL induction of hepatitis *in vivo*

8-10 week-old female B6 mice are intravenously injected with 10^9 pfu of Ad/hTRAIL with the equal number of Ad/Tet-on. Mice are fed with different concentrations of tetracycline in their drinking water immediately after inoculation of adenoviral vectors. Liver injury is determined by serum levels of AST using an AST diagnostic kit (Sigma). Expression of TRAIL is determined by Northern blot analysis.

To determine whether the membrane bound form of TRAIL induces liver damage *in vivo*, a recombinant adenoviral vector encoding the full length human TRAIL (Ad/hTRAIL) is constructed, the expression of which is under the control of

the tetracycline-inducible promoter. Twenty-four hours after intravenous inoculation of B6 mice with Ad/hTRAIL, tetracycline-induced expression of human TRAIL is observed in the liver in a dose-dependent fashion as demonstrated by Northern blot analysis (Fig. 13*a*). The expression levels of TRAIL correlated well with liver damage as shown by a tetracycline-dependent increase in serum levels of transaminases, again in a dose-dependent fashion (Fig. 13*b*). As the inoculation with adenoviral vector *per se* might increase the susceptibility of hepatocytes to TRAIL-mediated apoptosis, the hepatocytes from mice inoculated with Ad/TRAIL are isolated and tested for TRAIL-mediated cell death. There is no significantly increased cell death of Ad/TRAIL infected hepatocytes compared to those from control mice (Fig. 13c, left panel). Moreover, Ad/TRAIL inoculated mice did not exhibit increased liver injury after intravenous injection of soluble human TRAIL. Thus, it follows that hepatitis induced by Ad/TRAIL is mediated by high levels of TRAIL expression in its membrane form. Histologic analysis of liver sections revealed that damage to the hepatocytes is apparent as early as 24 hours after vector inoculation (Fig. 13d), and persisted for at least 7 days (Fig. 13*e*). These pathologic alterations in the liver also are tetracycline-dependent and occurred in a dose-dependent manner. The early phase, within 24 hours of treatment, of TRAIL-induced liver damage is characterized by foci of necrosis. Infiltration of inflammatory cells is not observed at this stage, but hemorrhage had occurred. By day 7 after inoculation, diffuse liver damage is apparent with marked lobular disarray, severe degeneration of hepatocytes with irregularly clumped cytoplasm and large clear spaces, and prominent apoptosis and necrosis. An extensive infiltrate of mononuclear cells is a characteristic feature at this stage. These results indicate that human TRAIL in its membrane-bound form is able to induce liver damage *in vivo*. Despite the propensity of human TRAIL to cause severe hepatitis in mice, it did not induce a lethal response. In contrast, mice inoculated with similar tetracycline-controlled vectors encoding Fas ligand developed fulminant hepatitis with massive apoptosis and necrosis of hepatocytes accompanied by severe hemorrhage and by

mortality occurring in a tetracycline dose-dependent within 72 hours of inoculation. The mortality rate reached 100% within 48 hours in those subgroups receiving 3 mg/ml or more of tetracycline. In contrast, all of the mice that received Ad/hTRAIL, regardless of the dose of tetracycline, are still alive four weeks after inoculation. Thus, it follows that, *in vivo*, the membrane-bound form of TRAIL is a less potent inducer of hepatocellular damage than Fas ligand. They further suggest that TRAIL might induce liver damage through a mechanism that differs from the mechanism underlying the toxicity of Fas ligand.

Example 12. Activated human T and B cells express increased levels of DR5.

To determine whether DR5 plays a role in TRAIL-mediated apoptosis of activated T cells and B cells, surface expression of DR5 on resting and activated T and B cells using TRA-8 is examined. The unstimulated human T cells in PBMC did not express significant levels of DR5 (Fig. 14). At 48 hours after either anti-CD3 or Con-A stimulation, cell surface DR5 expression is significantly increased. Similarly, the unstimulated B cells expressed very low levels of DR5. Stimulation with anti-μ but not LPS resulted in increased cell surface expression of DR5. These results indicate that both activated T and B cells express higher levels of cell surface DR5. Cells are stained with 20 μg/ml TRA-8 and PE anti-mouse IgG1.

Example 13. Activated T and B cells become susceptible to TRA-8 mediated apoptosis

To determine whether activated T and B cells are susceptible to TRA-8-mediated apoptosis, the T cells and B cells of human PBMC are stimulated with anti-CD3 or anti-μ in vitro for 48 hours, respectively. The viable cells and proliferating blast cells are collected by gradient centrifugation, and incubated with various concentrations of TRA-8. Unstimulated T cells and B cells are not susceptible to TRA-8-mediated apoptosis (Fig. 15). Total stimulated T cells and B cells showed a moderately increased susceptibility to TRA-8-mediated apoptosis, with 20% cells being killed by TRA-8 after overnight culture. The highly proliferating blast T cells are even more susceptible to TRA-8 mediated apoptosis.

More than 70% of the blast T cells could be killed by TRA-8. The blast B cells are also more susceptible to TRA-8 mediated apoptosis compared to others. These results indicate that activated T and B cells are susceptible to DR5-mediated apoptosis.

Example 14. TRA-8 depletes activated T cells in human/SCID mice

To determine the *in vivo* anti-T cell efficacy of TRA-8, NOD/SCID mice are intravenously injected with $1x10^8$ human PBMC. Normally, the human T cells in SCID mice are quickly activated in response to xenogeneic stimulation. The human PBMC/SCID mice are intraperitoneally injected with 100 μg TRA-8 or control IgG1 from the day of transfer, repeated daily for three days. Five days after transfer, the mononuclear cells are isolated from the spleen and stained with anti-human CD3 antibody, and the lymphocyte population is gated by flow cytometry analysis, and CD3 positive human T cells are analyzed. Approximately 30% of splenic lymphocytes are human T cells as determined by anti-human CD3 staining in control treated mice. However, only a few human T cells (less than 3%) are observed among the splenic lymphocytes in TRA-8 treated mice (Fig. 16). *In situ* histological study revealed that in the spleen of control mice, the human T cells are repopulated in the spleen with only a few apoptotic cells observed as demonstrated by TUNEL staining. In contrast, repopulation with viable human T cells is not observed in the spleen of TRA-8 treated mice, rather many apoptotic cells are observed (Fig. 17). These results demonstrate that TRA-8 has anti-T cell activity *in vivo*, and indicate the utility of the inventive antibodies for the treatment of GVH disease.

Example 15. Anti-cancer therapeutic activity of TRA-8

15.1 DR5 expression and function in human cancer tissues and cell lines

i) DR5 expression in human cancer tissues by in situ staining with TRA-8. To determine whether cancer cells and tissues differentially express higher levels of DR5, a panel of human cancer tissues including over 20 breast cancers, 6

ovarian cancers, 5 colon cancers and 5 prostate cancers are stained with TRA-8 for immunohistochemistry. The majority of these cancer tissues expressed detectable DR5. The expression levels of DR5 in these cancer tissues varied. In general, cancer tissues expressed higher levels of DR5 than uninvolved tissues. In addition, DR5 expression is apparently not correlated with the mutation of p53.

ii) DR5 expression and function in human cancer cell lines (Table 2). Nine human breast cancer cell lines, three ovarian cancer lines, three colon cancer lines and three prostate cancer lines are examined for cell surface expression of DR5 and susceptibility to TRA-8-induced apoptosis *in vitro*. 7 of 9 breast cancer lines, 3 of 3 ovarian cancer lines, 3 of 3 colon cancer lines and 3 of 3 prostate cancer lines expressed variable levels of cell surface DR5. Of 9 breast cancer lines, three are very susceptible, three are intermediate and three are resistant to TRA-8-mediated apoptosis. All three ovarian cancer lines are very susceptible. One of three colon cancer lines is very susceptible, while two have intermediate sensitivity. Two of three prostate cancer lines have intermediate sensitivity and one is resistant.

Table 2. Expression and function of DR5 in human cancer cells.

Cell line	Origin	Expression[1]	Susceptibility[2]
2LMP	breast	+	++++
LCC6	breast	+++	++++
MB468	breast	+++	+++
MB231	breast	++	+++
ZR-75-1	breast	+++	++
SKBR3	breast	+	++
MB453	breast	++	+
BT474	breast	+	-
DY36T2	breast	-	-
Caov-3	ovary	+	++++
OVCAR-3	ovary	++	++++
Skov-3	ovary	+	+++
WiDR	colon	+++	++++
HST29	colon	++	+++
T84	colon	+	++
PC3	prostate	+++	++
LnCap	prostate	+++	+

Cell line	Origin	Expression[1]	Susceptibility[2]
Du-145	prostate	+++	+

Note: [1]determined by flow cytometry, cells are stained with 20 μg/ml TRA-8 and compared to control antibody. [2]determined by ATPLite assay. ++++: over 80% killing, +++: killing between 60-80%, ++: killing between 40-60%, +: killing between 20-40%, - no killing.

iii) Combined cytotoxicity of TRA-8 with adriamycin. In several breast cancer lines, the effect of adriamycin on TRA8-induced apoptosis is examined. High doses of adriamycin exhibited an additive effect. However, in some of TRA-8 resistant lines, low doses of adriamycin synergistically enhance TRA-8-induced apoptosis.

iv) In vitro and in vivo binding activity of TRA-8 to human cancer cells. Using radioisotope labeled TRA-8. The binding activity of TRA-8 to a breast cancer line is examined *in vitro* and *in vivo* in SCID mice implanted with tumor. The *in vitro* binding activity to cancer cells is estimated as a Kd value of 3 nM, which is constant with our previous estimation using ELISA, and at least 50-fold higher than soluble TRAIL. *In vivo*, TRA-8 localized to implanted tumor tissues.

15.2. Therapy of chronic lympholytic leukemia in NOD/SCID mice with TRA-8

Chronic lympholytic leukemia (CLL) is a common form of B cell malignancy. Most malignant B cells in CLL are of the mature phenotype and are resistant to many apoptosis stimuli. DR5 expression and function in the B cells of five patients with CLL is examined. All patients had high counts of peripheral B cells as shown by more than 95% CD19+ B cells in PBMC. Compared to normal primary B cells, the CLL B cells of all patients had higher levels of cell surface DR5 and are more susceptible to TRA-8 induced apoptosis *in vitro*. Interestingly, the CLL B cells are also sensitive to bisindolemaleimide VIII (BisVIII) induced cytotoxicity. Following combined treatment with TRA-8 and BisVIII, nearly 50% of CLL B cells are killed while normal B cells remained unresponsive (Fig. 18).

Transfer of CLL B cells into NOD/SCID mice resulted in about 25%-30% CD19+ B cells repopulated in the spleen of recipient mice at five days after transfer. However, three doses of 100 μg TRA-8 treatment completely eliminated CLL B cells of four out of five patients in the spleen of the recipient SCID mice. Thus, TRA-8 alone or in concert with other substances is active as a therapeutic agent for chronic lympholytic leukemia.

Example 16. cDNA Cloning

(1) Determination of the N-terminal amino acid sequences of the heavy and light chains of TRA-8

In order to obtain cDNAs of the heavy and light chains of TRA-8, the N-terminal amino acid sequences of the heavy and light chains of TRA-8 and cloned TRA-8 genes are determined by known techniques.

Ten μg of the solution containing the anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 is subjected to SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis ("SDS-PAGE"), using a gel concentration of 12% w/v, 100 V constant voltage, for 120 minutes. After electrophoresis, the gel is immersed in transfer buffer 25 mM Tris-HCl (pH 9.5), 20% methanol, 0.02% v/v SDS for 5 minutes. After this time, the protein content of the gel is transferred to a polyvinylidene difluoride membrane ("PVDF membrane"; pore size 0.45 um; Millipore, Japan), presoaked in transfer buffer, using a blotting apparatus (KS-8451; Marysol) under conditions of 10 V constant voltage, 4°C, for 14 hours.

After this time, the PVDF membrane is washed with washing buffer 25 mM NaCl, 10 mM sodium borate buffer (pH 8.0), then stained in a staining solution (50% v/v methanol, 20% v/v acetic acid and 0.05% w/v Coomassie Brilliant Blue) for 5 minutes to locate the protein bands. The PVDF membrane is then destained with 90% v/v aqueous methanol, and the bands corresponding to the heavy chain, the band with the lower mobility and light chain, the band with the higher mobility previously located on the PDVF membrane are excised and washed with deionized water.

The N-terminal amino acid sequence of the heavy and light chains are determined by the Edman automated method (Edman, P., et al., (1967), Eur. J. Biochem., 1, 80) using a gas-phase protein sequencer (PPSQ-10; Shimadzu Seisakusyo, K. K.).

The N-terminal amino acid sequence of the band corresponding to the heavy chain is determined to be:

Glu-Val-Met-Leu-Val-Glu-Ser-Gly-Gly-Gly-Leu-Val-Lys-Pro-Gly-Gly-Ser-Leu-Lys-Leu (SEQ ID No. 4 of the Sequence Listing);

and that of the band corresponding to the light chain is determined to be:

Asp-Ile-Val-Met-Thr-Gln-Ser-His-Lys-Phe-Met-Ser-Thr-Ser-Val-Gly-Asp-Arg-Val-Ser (SEQ ID No. 5 of the Sequence Listing).

Comparison of these amino acid sequences with the database of amino acid sequence of antibodies produced by Kabat et al. (Kabat E.A., et al., (1991), in "Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest Vol. II," U.S. Department of Health and Human Services) revealed that the heavy chain (γ1 chain) and the light chain (k chain) of TRA-8 belonged to subtypes 3d and 1, respectively.

(2) cDNA cloning

Based on above findings, oligonucleotide primers are synthesized which would be expected to hybridize with portions of the 5'-untranslated regions and the very ends of the 3'-translated regions of the genes belonging to these mouse subtypes. Then, cDNAs encoding the heavy and light chains of TRA-8 are cloned by the following combination of reverse transcription and PCR (RT-PCR):

a) Template

The total RNA of TRA-8 hybridoma (ATCC No. PTA-1428) is extracted by using TRIzol Reagent (GIBCO BRL). The template for the PCR reaction used cDNA that is obtained by using the First-Strand cDNA synthesis kit (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech) according to the instruction manual provided with the kit.

b) PCR Primers

The following oligonucleotide primers are synthesized for the PCR:

5'-cagcactgaa cacggacccc-3' (H5NCS1: SEQ ID No. 6 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-aaaggtaatt tattgagaag-3' (H5NCS2: SEQ ID No. 7 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-cctcaccatg aacttcgggc-3' (H5SS1: SEQ ID No. 8 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-ctgttgtatg cacatgagac-3' (H5SS2: SEQ ID No. 9 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-gaagtgatgc tggtggagtc-3' (H5CS1: SEQ ID No. 10 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-agtgtgaagt gatgctggtg-3' (H5CS2: SEQ ID No. 11 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-tttaccagga gagtgggaga g-3' (H3CR: SEQ ID No. 12 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-tgcagagaca gtgaccagag-3' (H3VR: SEQ ID No. 13 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-tgttcaggac cagcatgggc-3' (L5NCS1: SEQ ID No. 14 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-aagacatttt ggattctaac-3' (L5NCS2: SEQ ID No. 15 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-tatcatgaag tctttgtatg-3' (L5SS1: SEQ ID No. 16 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-gatggagaca cattctcagg-3' (L5SS2: SEQ ID No. 17 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-gacattgtga tgacccagtc-3' (L5CS: SEQ ID No. 18 of the Sequence Listing);

5'-ttaacactca ttcctgttga-3' (L3CR: SEQ ID No. 19 of the Sequence Listing); and

5'-gactgggtca tcacaatgtc-3' (LCSR: SEQ ID No. 20 of the Sequence Listing).

Unless otherwise specified, all oligonucleotides in these Examples are synthesized by Pharmacia Biotech. All oligonucleotides are stored at –20°C after being dissolved in distilled water.

c) PCR reaction

Composition of the PCR reaction solution:

template cDNA, 5 µl of total 33 µl reaction

primer DR5p1, 10 pmol;

primer DR5p2, 10 pmol;

10 x concentrated PCR buffer (provided with the kit), 10 µl;

dNTPs (each 2.5 mM), 4 µl; and

Taq polymerase (Promega), 5 units.

Sterile distilled water is added to the solution to a total volume of 100 µl. Unless otherwise specified, dNTPs are an equimolar mixture of dATP, dCTP, dGTP and dTTP (2.5 mM each).

The PCR reaction is conducted as follows. The solution is first heated at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a cycle of heating to 94°C for 30 sec, 52°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 3 minutes, is repeated 40 times. After completion of this procedure, the reaction solution is heated at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The amplified DNA fragments, thus obtained, are separated on a 1% agarose gel containing 0.25 µg/ml ethidium bromide. The bands determined to contain the desired DNA fragments are cut out using a razor blade and the DNA is recovered therefrom using the Gene Clean kit (BIO101). The DNA fragment is cloned using pGEM-T Easy vector (Promega). This is performed as follows.

The DNA fragment recovered from the PCR reaction solution, together with 50 ng of pGEM-T Easy vector (provided with the kit), is mixed with 1 µl of 10 X ligase reaction buffer (6 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.5), 6 mM magnesium chloride, 5 mM sodium chloride, 7 mM β-mercaptoethanol, 0.1 mM ATP, 2 mM DTT, 1 mM spermidine, and 0.1 mg/ml bovine serum albumin), to which 4 units of T4 DNA ligase (1 µl) has been added. The total volume of the mixture is adjusted to 10 µl

with sterile deionized water, and the resulting ligase solution is incubated at 14°C for 15 hours. After this time, 2 µl of the ligase reaction solution is added to 50 µl of competent *E. coli* strain JM109 (provided with the kit and brought to competence in accordance with the instruction manual) to which 2 µl of 0.5 M β-mercaptoethanol had been added, and the resulting mixture is kept on ice for 30 minutes, then at 42°C for 30 seconds, and again on ice for 5 minutes. Next, 500 µl of medium containing 2% v/v tryptone, 0.5% w/v yeast extract, 0.05% w/v sodium chloride, 2.5 mM potassium chloride, 1 mM magnesium chloride, and 20 mM glucose (hereinafter referred to as "SOC" medium) is added to the culture, and the mixture is incubated for 1 hour at 37°C with shaking. After this time, the culture is spread on an L-broth agar plate (1% v/v tryptone, 0.5% w/v yeast extract, 0.5% w/v sodium chloride, 0.1% w/v glucose, and 0.6% w/v bacto-agar (Difco)), containing 100 µg/ml. Ampicillin resistant colonies appearing on the plate are selected and scraped off with a platinum transfer loop, and cultured in L-broth medium containing 100 µg/ml ampicillin at 37°C, overnight, with shaking at 200 r.p.m. After incubation, the cells are harvested by centrifugation, from which plasmid DNA is prepared by the alkali method. The obtained plasmid is designated as plasmid pH62 for heavy chain of TRA-8 or pL28 for light chain of TRA-8. The transformant *E coli* strains harboring these plasmid, designated as *E. coli* JM109/pH62 and *E. coli* JM109/pL28 were deposited with International Patent Organism Depositary, National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 1-1, Higashi 1 chome Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki-ken, 305-5466, Japan on April 20, 2001, in accordance with the Budapest Treaty for the Deposit of Microorganisms, and were accorded the accession numbers FERM BP-7560 and FERM BP-7561, respectively. The nucleotide sequences of these DNAs encoding the heavy chain and the light chain of TRA-8 are confirmed by the dideoxy method (Sanger, F. S., et al., (1977), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 74:5463-5467) using 3700 DNA Analyzer (ABI PRISM; Perkin Elmer Applied Biosystems, Japan).

The nucleotide sequences of the heavy and light chains of TRA-8 are given as SEQ ID No. 21 and No. 22 of the Sequence Listing, respectively. The amino acid sequences of the heavy and light chains of TRA-8 are given as SEQ ID No. 23 and No. 24 of the Sequence Listing, respectively. The N-terminal amino acid sequences of the heavy and light chains of TRA-8 established in above matched perfectly. Furthermore, when the amino acid sequences of the heavy and light chains are compared with the database of amino acid sequences of antibodies, it is established that, for the heavy chain, nucleotide Nos. 58 to 414 in SEQ ID No. 21 constituted the variable region, while nucleotide Nos. 415 to 1392 in SEQ ID No. 21 constituted the constant region. For the light chain, nucleotide Nos. 64 to 387 in SEQ ID No. 22 constituted the variable region, while nucleotide Nos. 388 to 702 in SEQ ID No. 22 constituted the constant region. The locations and sequences of the CDRs are also elucidated by comparing the homologies with the database. The amino acid sequences of CDR 1, CDR2, and CDR3 of heavy chain of TRA-8 are shown in SEQ ID No. 25, No. 26, and No. 27, respectively. The amino acid sequences of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 of light chain of TRA-8 are shown in SEQ ID No. 28, No. 29, and No. 30, respectively.

Example 17. Designing a Humanized Version of the TRA-8 Antibody

(1) Molecular modeling of a variable region of TRA-8

Molecular modeling of the variable region of TRA-8 is performed by the method generally known as homology modeling (Methods in Enzymology, 203, 121-153, (1991)). The primary sequences of variable regions of human immunoglobulin registered in the Protein Data Bank (Nuc. Acid Res. 28, 235-242 (2000)), for which the three-dimensional structures derived from x-ray crystallography are available, are compared with the framework regions of TRA-8 determined above. As a result, 1NCD and 1HIL are selected as having the highest sequence homologies to the framework regions for the light and heavy chains of TRA-8, respectively. Three-dimensional structures of the framework regions are generated by combining the coordinates of 1NCD and 1HIL which correspond to the

light and heavy chains of TRA-8, to obtain the "framework model". Using the classification defined by Chothia et al., the CDRs of TRA-8 are classified as follows; $CDRL_1$, $CDRL_2$, $CDRH_1$ and $CDRH_2$ belong to canonical classes 2,1,1,3, respectively, while $CDRL_3$ does not belong to any specific canonical classes. The CDR loops of $CDRL_1$, $CDRL_2$, $CDRH_1$, $CDRH_2$ are fixed to the conformations inherent to their respective canonical classes, and integrated into the framework model. $CDRL_3$ is assigned the conformation of cluster 8A, according to the classification of Thornton et al. (J. Mol. Biol., 263, 800-815, (1996)), and $CDRH_3$ is classified into k(8)C using the H3 rule (FEBS letter 455,188-197(1999)). Then representative conformations for $CDRL_3$ and $CDRH_3$ are integrated into the framework model.

Finally, energy calculations are carried out to eliminate unfavorable inter-atomic contacts, in order to obtain a probable molecular model of TRA-8's variable region in terms of energy. The above procedure is performed using the commercially available common molecular modeling system ABM (Oxford Molecular Limited, Inc.). For the molecular model obtained, the accuracy of the structure is further evaluated using the software, PROCHECK (J. Appl. Cryst. (1993), 26, 283-291).

(2) Designing the amino acid sequences for humanized TRA-8.

Construction of humanized TRA-8 antibodies is performed by the method generally known as CDR grafting (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86, 10029-10033 (1989)). The acceptor antibody is chosen based on the amino acid homology in the framework region. The sequences of framework region in TRA-8 are compared with all the human framework sequences in the Kabat database of amino acid sequences of antibodies (Nuc. Acid Res. 29, 205-206 (2001)). As a result, mAB58'CL antibody is selected as an acceptor due to the highest sequence homology of 80% for the framework region. The amino acid residues in the framework region for mAb58'CL are aligned with that for TRA-8 and the positions where different amino acids are used are identified. The location of those residues

are analyzed using the three dimensional model of TRA-8 constructed above and the donor residues which should be grafted on the acceptor are chosen by the criteria given by Queen et al. (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86, 10029-10033 (1989)). Humanized TRA-8 sequences are constructed as described in the following example by transferring several donor residues into acceptor antibody, mAb58'CL.

Example 18. Construction of an Expression Vector for the Heavy Chain of the Humanized Antibody

(1) Construction of plasmid carrying the heavy chain variable region DNA of Humanized TRA-8

In order to determine the activity of humanized TRA-8, the plasmid carrying the heavy chain of humanized TRA-8 is constructed as follows. However, it is appreciated the humanization of TRA-8 is not limited to these examples.

As shown in SEQ ID No. 31 of the Sequence Listing, humanization of the amino acid sequences of the heavy chain of the mouse anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 entailed replacing the 13th amino acid (lysine), the 19th amino acid (lysine), the 40th amino acid (threonine), the 42nd amino acid (glutamic acid), the 44th amino acid (arginine), the 84th amino acid (serine), the 88th amino acid (serine), the 93rd amino acid (methionine), the 114th amino acid (threonine), the 115th amino acid (leucine) with glutamine, arginine, alanine, glycine, glycine, asparagine, alanine, valine, leucine, and valine, respectively.

The plasmid carrying DNA encoding heavy chain variable region of humanized TRA-8 (SEQ ID No. 31 of the Sequence Listing) are constructed as follows.

PCR is used to construct the following DNA sequences, each of which comprised described above:

The following 12 oligonucleotides are synthesized:

5'- ttggataagc ttggcttgac ctcaccatgg gatggagctg tatcatcctc ttcttggtag caacagctac aggtgtccac -3' (A; SEQ ID No. 32);

5'- tctgaagtaa tgctggtgga gtctggggga ggcttagtac agcctggagg gtccctgaga ctctcctgtg cagcctctgg -3' (B; SEQ ID No. 33);

5'- attcactttc agtagttatg taatgtcttg ggttcggcag gcaccaggga agggtctgga gtgggttgca accattagta -3' (C; SEQ ID No. 34);

5'- gtggtggtag ttacacctac tatccagaca gtgtgaaggg ccgattcacc atctccagag acaatgccaa gaacaccctg -3' (D; SEQ ID No. 35);

5'- tatctgcaaa tgaacagtct gagagcagag gacacggctg tttattactg tgcaagaagg ggtgactcta tgattacgac -3' (E; SEQ ID No. 36);

5'- ggactactgg ggccaaggga ccctggtcac agtctcctca gcctc cacc aagggcccat cggtc -3' (F; SEQ ID No. 37);

5'- ctaccaagaa gaggatgata cagctccatc ccatggtgag gtcaagccaa gcttatccaa -3' (G; SEQ ID No. 38);

5'- tctcagggac cctccaggct gtactaagcc tcccccagac tccaccagca ttacttcaga gtggacacct gtagctgttg -3' (H; SEQ ID No. 39);

5'- tccagaccct tccctggtgc ctgccgaacc caagacatta cataactact gaaagtgaat ccagaggctg cacaggagag -3' (I; SEQ ID No. 40);

5'- ctctggagat ggtgaatcgg cccttcacac tgtctggata gtaggtgtaa ctaccaccac tactaatggt tgcaacccac -3' (J; SEQ ID No. 41);

5'- ccttcttgca cagtaataaa cagccgtgtc ctctgctctc agactgttca tttgcagata cagggtgttc ttggcattgt -3' (K; SEQ ID No. 42); and

5'- gaccgatggg cccttggtgg aggctgagga gactgtgacc agggtcccct ggccccagta gtccgtcgta atcatagagt cacc -3' (L; SEQ ID No. 43).

The following 2 PCR primers are synthesized as described above:

5'- ttggataagc ttggcttgac -3' (P1; SEQ ID No. 44); and

5'- gaccgatggg cccttggtgg a -3' (P2; SEQ ID No. 45).

The synthesis of DNA encoding a polypeptide chain comprising a secretion signal sequence, a variable region of humanized TRA-8 heavy chain and the 8 amino acid residues at the N-terminus of the IgG-CH1 region is performed using a combination of PCR respectively.

The DNA fragment is prepared as follows.

Composition of the PCR reaction solution:

oligonucleotide A, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide B, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide C, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide D, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide E, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide F, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide G, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide H, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide I, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide J, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide K, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide L, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide primer P1, 2 μM;
oligonucleotide primer P2, 2 μM;
10 X Pyrobest buffer II, 10 μl;
dNTP mix, 8 μl;
Pyrobest DNA polymerase, 0.5 μl; and
Redistilled water to a final volume of 50 μl.

The PCR reaction is conducted as follows. The solution is first heated at 94°C for 5 minutes, after which a cycle of heating to 98°C for 10 second, 55°C for 30 second and 72°C for 1 minute, is repeated 7 times. After completion of this procedure, the reaction solution is heated at 72°C for 15 minutes.

An equal volume of phenol-chloroform (50% v/v phenol saturated with water, 48% v/v chloroform, 2% v/v isoamyl alcohol) is added to 200 μl of each of the PCR products, and vigorously mixed for 1 minute. After this time, the mixture is centrifuged at 10,000 X g, and the aqueous layer is recovered and mixed with an equal volume of chloroform-isoamyl alcohol (96% v/v chloroform and 4% v/v

isoamyl alcohol), which is again vigorously at 10,000 X g and the aqueous layer is recovered. The series of steps recited in this paragraph is referred to, hereafter, as "phenol extraction").

Ethanol precipitation is then performed on the recovered aqueous layer. As used and referred to herein, "ethanol precipitation" consists of adding, with mixing, a one tenth volume of 3M sodium acetate (pH 5.2) and 2.5 volumes of 100% ethanol to the solution to be treated, and freezing the mixture using dry ice. The resulting mixture is then centrifuged at 10,000 X g to recover DNA as a precipitate.

After phenol extraction and ethanol precipitation, the resulting DNA precipitate is vacuum-dried, dissolved in a minimum of redistilled water, and separated by 3% agarose gel electrophoresis. After electrophoresis, the gel is stained with a 1 μg/ml aqueous solution of ethidium bromide to allow detection of DNA under UV light. The DNA band corresponding to humanized TRA-8 DNA is cut out using a razor blade and eluted from the gel using Geneclean Spin Kit (BIO 101, CA, USA). After phenol extraction, the eluted DNA is then concentrated by centrifugation at 7,500 X g, followed by ethanol precipitation, and finally dissolved in 5 μl of distilled water.

The resulting, each extracted DNA is cloned using pGEM-T Easy vector (Promega) as follows:

The DNA fragment recovered from the PCR reaction, 5 μl;

10 X Taq polymerase buffer, 1 μl;

dNTP mixture, 1 μl

Taq polymerase (5 unit/ml), 1 μl; and

redistilled water to a final volume of 10 μl.

After the above each solution is reacted at 70°C for 30 minutes, each DNA solution and pGEM-T Easy vector are ligated using a DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Shuzo Co., Ltd.) using the manufacturer's protocol.

After 4 hours incubation at 15°C, 2 μl of the incubated reaction solution is mixed with 100 μl of competent *E. coli* strain JM109 at a cell density of 1-2 x 10^9

cells/ml (Takara Shuzo Co., Ltd.), and the mixture is kept on ice for 30 minutes, then at 42°C for 30 seconds, and again on ice for 1 minutes. Then, 500 μl of SOC medium (2% v/v tryptone, 0.5% w/v yeast extract, 0.05% w/v sodium chloride, 2.5 mM w/v potassium chloride, 1 mM magnesium chloride, and 20 mM glucose) is added the mixture, which is incubated for a further hour, with shaking. Transformant strains are then isolated, and plasmid DNA is prepared from the strains as described in "Molecular Cloning A Laboratory Manual". The nucleotide sequences of these DNAs encoding the heavy chain of humanized TRA-8 are confirmed by the dideoxy method (Sanger, F. S., et al., (1977), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 74:5463-5467) using 3700 DNA Analyzer (ABI PRISM; Perkin Elmer Applied Biosystems, Japan).

The resulting plasmids are designated pHB14 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the heavy chain of humanized TRA-8). The transformant *E coli* strain harboring these plasmid, designated as E. coli JM109/pHB14 was deposited with International Patent Organism Depositary, National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 1-1, Higashi 1 chome Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki-ken, 305-5466, Japan on April 20, 2001, in accordance with the Budapest Treaty for the Deposit of Microorganisms, and was accorded the accession number FERM BP-7556.

(2) Construction of expression plasmids carrying the heavy chain variable region DNA of Humanized TRA-8

Recombinant expression vectors for animal cells are constructed by inserting the DNA encoding the heavy chain of humanized TRA-8 (cloned in above) as follows.

One μg of plasmid pSRHHH3 (European patent application EP 0-909-816-A1) carrying the heavy chain variable region of humanized anti-Fas monoclonal antibody HFE7A and human IgG1 constant region genomic DNA, an expression vector for mammalian cells, is digested with the restriction enzymes HindIII and ApaI, and separated by 3% agarose gel electrophoresis. After electrophoresis, the gel is stained with a 1 μg/ml aqueous solution of ethidium bromide to allow

detection of DNA under UV light. The vector DNA bands containing human IgG1 constant region genomic DNA without the heavy chain variable region of humanized HFE7A are cut out using a razor blade and eluted from the gel using Geneclean Spin Kit (BIO 101, CA, USA). After phenol extraction, the eluted DNA is then concentrated by centrifugation at 7,500 X g, followed by ethanol precipitation, and finally dissolved in 5 µl of distilled water and then dephosphorylated using CIP. The resulting digested, dephosphorylated plasmid (100 ng) is ligated with 1 µg of the pHB14 DNA fragment containing the DNA encoding the heavy chain variable region of humanized TRA-8, which had also been digested with HindIII and ApaI, using a DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Shuzo Co., Ltd.). The ligation mixture is then used to transform E. coli JM109, which is then plated on LB agar plates containing 50 µg/ml ampicillin.

The transformants obtained by this method are cultured in 2 ml of liquid LB medium containing 50 µg/ml ampicillin at 37°C overnight, and plasmid DNA is subsequently extracted from the resulting culture by the alkaline-SDS method.

The extracted plasmid DNA is digested with HindIII and ApaI, and subjected to 3% w/v agarose gel electrophoresis to confirm the presence or absence of the insert of the DNA encoding the heavy chain variable region of humanized TRA-8. The insertion and orientation of the desired DNA fragment in the vector is confirmed by DNA sequencing using a gene sequence analyzer (ABI Prism 3700 DNA Analyzer; Applied Biosystems). The resulting expression plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the heavy chain of humanized TRA-8 is designated pHB14-1.

Example 19. Construction of an Expression Vector for the Light Chain of the Humanized Antibody

(1) Construction of vectors for the light chains of humanized versions of TRA-8 antibody

As shown in SEQ ID No. 46 of the Sequence Listing, in humanizing the amino acid sequence of the light chain of the mouse anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8, 8th amino acid (histidine), 9th amino acid (lysine), 10th amino acid

(phenylalanine), 11th amino acid (methionine), 13th amino acid (threonine), 20th amino acid (serine), 42nd amino acid (glutamine), 43rd (serine), 60th amino acid (aspartic acid), 63rd amino acid (threonine), 77th amino acid (asparagine), 78th amino acid (valine), 80th amino acid (serine) 83rd amino acid (leucine), 85th amino acid (aspartic acid), 87th amino acid (phenylalanine),and 99th amino acid (glycine) 103rd amino acid (leucine) and 108th amino acid (alanine) from the N-terminus of the amino acid sequence of the TRA-8 light chain are replaced with proline, serine, serine, leucine, alanine, threonine, lysine, alanine, serine, serine, serine, leucine, proline, phenylalanine, threonine, tyrosine, glutamine, valine and threonine respectively. The resulting sequence is designated LM2.

Expression plasmids carrying this type of humanized light chain amino acid sequences of the anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 is constructed as follows.

1) Synthesis of primers for preparing the variable and constant regions of the light chain of humanized TRA-8

DNA coding for the LM2 polypeptide chain (SEQ ID No. 46 of the Sequence Listing), each of which is a fusion of the variable region of humanized anti-DR5 antibody TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of the human Ig light chain (κ chain), are respectively synthesized by using combinations of PCR.

Further to 7AL1P (SEQ ID No. 47) and 7ALCN (SEQ ID No. 48), the following oligonucleotide primers are synthesized for PCR:

5'- gtcccccaca gatgcagaca aagaacttgg agattgggtc atcacaatgt caccagtgga -3' (HKSPR11; SEQ ID No. 49);

5'- ccaagttctt tgtctgcatc agtaggagac agggtcacca tcacctgc -3' (HKCDF11; SEQ ID No. 50);

5'- agtgtgccgg gtggatgccc agtaaatcag tagtttagga gctttccctg gtttctg -3' (HKCDR12; SEQ ID No. 51);

5'- tgggcatcca cccggcacac tggggtccca agcaggttta gtggcagt -3' (HKCDF22; SEQ ID No. 52);

5'- ataactacta tattgctgac agtaataggt tgcaaaatcc tccggctgca gactagagat ggt -3' (HKCDR22; SEQ ID No. 53); and

5'- cagcaatata gcagctatcg gacgttcggt caaggcacca aggtggaaat caaacggact gtg -3' (HKCF12; SEQ ID No. 54).

2) Construction of plasmid pCR3.1/M2-1 (cloning of humanized TRA-8 light chain)

LM2-DNA fragment as defined in SEQ ID No. 55 of the Sequence Listing coding for the amino acid sequence as defined in SEQ ID No. 46 of the same is prepared by performing 2-step PCR, inserted into a plasmid vector and cloned in *E. coli.*

a) First step PCR

LM2-F1-DNA fragment coding for a secretion signal sequence and a portion of FRL_1 region with a Hind III restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 5'-end is prepared under the following conditions. The template plasmids, pHSGHM17 and pSRPDHH, are obtained by following the description in a European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pHSGHM17 DNA (European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1), 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer HKSPR11, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 μl

10×PCR buffer, 5 μl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase (PerkinElmer), 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 μl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM2-F2-DNA fragment coding for a portion of FRL_1, $CDRL_1$, FRL_2, and $CDRL_2$ and is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pL28 DNA, 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer HKCDF11, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer HKCDR12, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10×PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM2-F3-DNA fragment coding for CDRL2, FRL_3, and a portion of $CDRL_3$ is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pSRPDHH DNA(European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1), 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer HKCDF22, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer HKCDR22, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10×PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM2-F4-DNA fragment coding for $CDRL_3$, FRL_4 and the constant region with an EcoR I restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 3'-end is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pSRPDHH DNA, 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer HKCF12, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10×PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The amplified DNA fragments after PCR are separated by 5% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. The gel after electrophoresis is stained with 1 µg/ml of ethidium bromide to detect the produced DNA under UV light. The respective DNA bands thus detected are excised with a razor

b) Second step PCR

LM2-DNA in which above described LM2-F1-DNA, LM2-F2-DNA, LM2-F3-DNA and LM2-F4-DNA fragments are fused is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

Gel fragment of LM2-F1-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,

Gel fragment of LM2-F2-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,

Gel fragment of LM2-F3-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,

Gel fragment of LM2-F4-DNA prepared in the first step PCR

oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5.0 µl

10×PCR buffer, 5.0 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The thus prepared LM2-DNA fragment is inserted into plasmid pCR3.1DNA using Eukaryotic TA cloning Kit (Invitrogen) following the manufacturer's protocol and introduced into the competent *E. Coli* TOP10F' contained in the kit. The nucleotide sequences of these DNAs encoding the light chain of humanized TRA-8 are confirmed by the dideoxy method (Sanger, F. S., et al., (1977), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 74:5463-5467) using 3700 DNA Analyzer (ABI PRISM; Perkin Elmer Applied Biosystems, Japan).

The resulting plasmids are designated pCR3.1/M2-1 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain variable region of humanized TRA-8 and a human Ig light chain constant region).

The obtained plasmid pCR3.1/M2-1 containing LM2-DNA fragment is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One µg of cloning plasmid pHSG399 DNA is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pHSG399 DNA and LM2-DNA fragment, that have been digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar medium containing 0.1 mM IPTG, 0.1% X-Gal and 50 µg/ml chloramphenicol (final concentrations). The white transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 50 µg/ml

chloramphenicol, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The extracted plasmid DNA is digested with Hind III and EcoR I, and then a clone carrying LM2-DNA fragment is selected by 1% agarose gel electrophoresis.

As a result of the above procedure, plasmid pHSG/M2-1-4 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM2 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is obtained. The transformant *E coli* strain harboring these plasmid, designated as *E. coli* DH5α/pHSG/M2-1-4 was deposited with International Patent Organism Depositary, National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 1-1, Higashi 1 chome Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki-ken, 305-5466, Japan on April 20, 2001, in accordance with the Budapest Treaty for the Deposit of Microorganisms, and was accorded the accession number FERM BP-7563.

3) Construction of plasmid pSR/M2-1 (expression plasmid for humanized LM2 TRA-8 light chain)

The obtained plasmid pHSG/M2-1-4 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM2 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pSRPDHH DNA (European patent application EP 0-909-816-A1) is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pSRPDHH DNA and HindIII-EcoRI DNA fragment obtained from pHSG/M2-1-4 are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar. The transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 100 μg/ml ampicillin, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The insertion and orientation of the desired DNA fragment in pSRPDHH vector is confirmed by DNA sequencing using a gene sequence analyzer (ABI Prism 3700 DNA Analyzer; Applied Biosystems).

The resulting expression plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain of humanized TRA-8 is designated pSR/M2-1.

Example 20. Production of Humanized Antibody

Transfection of COS-7 cells, i.e., a cell line derived from a monkey kidney, with the expression plasmids for the humanized TRA-8 heavy chain and the humanized TRA-8 light chain obtained above is conducted by FUGENE6 transfection reagent methods (Boehringer Mannheim Biochemica) according to the instruction manual provided with the kit.

COS-7 cells (American Type Culture Collection No. CRL-1651) are grown to semi-confluent (3 x 10^6 cells/dish) in a culture dish (culture area: 57 cm^2; Sumitomo Bakelite) containing Dulbecco's Modified Eagle medium (hereinafter referred to as "D-MED"; Gibco BRL) supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum (hereinafter abbreviated as "FCS"; Moregate).

In the meantime, 10 μg/dish (total 5 dishes) of the humanized DR5 heavy chain expression plasmid DNA (pHA15-1) and 10 μg/dish of the humanized DR5 light chain expression plasmid DNA prepared by the alkaline-SDS method and cesium chloride density gradient centrifugation are mixed, and then precipitated with ethanol, followed by suspending in 5 μl/dish of dH_2O.

After 15 μl/dish of FUGENE6 Transfection regent is mixed with 180 μl/dish D-MEM without FCS, this FUGENE solution (185 μl/dish) is mixed with 5 μl/dish DNA solution containing 10 μg/dish of the humanized DR5 heavy chain expression plasmid DNA and 10μg/dish of the humanized DR5 light chain expression plasmid DNA. After 15 minutes incubation at room temperature, the obtained plasmid suspension (200 μl) is added to the previously prepared COS-7 plates. After incubating in 5% CO_2 at 37°C for 24 hours, the culture medium is changed with D-MEM without FCS. After incubating in 5% CO_2 at 37°C for 72 hours, the culture supernatant is recovered to purify the expression products in the supernatant fluids. By the method as described above, COS-7 cells are transfected with each of the following plasmid combinations:

(A): no plasmid DNA

(B): cotransfection of pHB14-1 and pSR/M2-1

The culture is then centrifuged (1,000 r.p.m., 5 minutes) and collected the supernatant. The supernatant is centrifuged again (9,800 r.p.m., 15 minutes) and filtrated with 0.45 μm filter (ADVANTEC TOYO DISMIC-25cs, Cat # 25CS045 AS). The purification of IgG from the filtrates are achieved using Protein G-POROS affinity chromatography (Applied Biosystems) under the following conditions:

HPLC: BioCAD 700E (Applied Biosystems)

column: ProteinG-ID sensor cartridge (column size: 2.1 mmID x 30 mm LD, bed volume: 0.1 ml; Cat # 2-1002-00, Applied Biosystems)

elution buffer: 0.1M Glycine-HCl (pH 2.5)

neutralization buffer: 1M Tris-HCl (pH 8.5)

detection: 280 nm

flow rate: 1 ml/min

fraction size: 0.5 ml/0.5 min

fraction tube: 1.5 ml polypropylene microtube

temperature: 4°C

After all the filtrates are applied to column, 30 ml of PBS (Sigma, Cat # 1000-3) is used to wash column. When the elution buffer is applied, fraction collector started. Each fraction microtube previously contained 55 μl of 1M NaCl, 110 μl of neutralization buffer and 74 μl of 2 mg/ml bovine serum albumin (Sigma, Cat # A-7030) in PBS. The fractions from No. 8 through No. 10 are collected and dialyzed against 1 liter PBS (pH 7.5) at 4°C for 1 day using Slide-A lyzer (Pierce, Cat # 66450). The dialysis buffer is changed twice.

Verification of the expression of the humanized antibodies and quantitative assay of the expression products in the culture supernatant fluids prepared is performed by ELISA with an antibody against anti-human IgG.

To each well of a 96-well plate (MaxiSorp, Nunc), 100 µl of goat anti-human IgG Fc specific polyclonal antibody (Kappel) dissolved at the final concentration of 0.5 µg/ml in adsorption buffer (0.05 M sodium hydrogencarbonate, 0.02% sodium azide, pH 9.6) is added and the plate is incubated at 37°C for 2 hours to cause adsorption of the antibody. Then, the plate is washed with 350 µl of PBS(-) containing 0.05% Tween-20 (BioRad) (hereinafter referred to as "PBS-T") five times. To the wells after washing, the culture supernatant diluted with D-MEM containing 10% FCS is added and incubated at 37°C for 2 hours. After washing again with PBS-T, 100 µl of alkaline phosphatase-labeled goat anti-human IgG Fc specific polyclonal antibody (Jackson Immuno Research Lab.) diluted 10,000-fold with PBS-T is added to each well and incubated at 37°C for 2 hours. After washing again with PBS-T, a substrate solution of p-nitrophenyl phosphate obtained from Alkaline Phosphatase Substrate kit (Bio Rad) is added according to the instruction manual provided with the kit. After incubating at 37°C for 0.5 to 1 hour, the absorbance at 405 nm is measured. In the present experiments, human plasma immunoglobulin G subclass 1 (IgG1) (Biopure AG) diluted with D-MEM containing 10% FCS to certain concentrations is used as concentration reference samples of the humanized DR5 antibodies contained in the culture supernatant fluids.

As a result, the expression and purified products in the culture supernatant are detected specifically with the anti-human IgG antibody. The amount of human IgG antibody is 8.96 µg (800 µl).

Example 21. Apoptosis-inducing activity of Humanized Antibody

Jurkat cells (ATCC No. TIB-152), are used to examine the apoptosis-inducing activity of the purified humanized TRA-8 antibody.

Jurkat cells cultured in RPMI1640 medium with 10% FCS (Gibco BRL) at 37°C for 3 days in the presence of 5% CO_2 are dispensed into each well of a 96-well microplate (Sumitomo Bakelite) at 50 µl per well. The humanized TRA-8 prepared in Example 20 are adjusted to have the concentration of the final product of interest of 100 ng/ml with RPMI1640 medium containing 10% FCS by estimating their

concentrations in the fluids according to the method described in Example 20. Each of the solutions of the expression products thus adjusted to 100 ng/ml is used to produce serial dilutions by repeating serial 2-fold dilution with RPMI1640 containing 10% FCS. Each of the diluted humanized TRA-8 solution is added to each well at 50 μl per well. After reacting at 37°C for 12 hours, 50 μl of 25 μM PMS (phenazine methosulfate; Sigma Chemical Co.) containing 1 mg/ml XTT (2,3-bis[2-methoxy-4-nitro-5-sulfophenyl]-2H-tetrazolium-5-carboxyaniride inner salt; Sigma Chemical Co.) is added (final concentrations of 250 μg/ml for XTT and 5 μM for PMS). After incubating for 3 hours, the absorbance at 450 nm of each well is measured to calculate the cell viability by using the reduction ability of mitochondria as the index.

The viability of the cells in each well is calculated according to the following formula:

$$\text{Viability (\%)} = 100 \times (a-b) / (c-b)$$

wherein "a" is the measurement of a test well, "b" is the measurement of a well with no cells, and "c" is the measurement of a well with no antibody added.

As a result, the expression product prepared in Example 20 (humanized TRA-8) is demonstrated to induce apoptosis in cells of T lymphoma cell line expressing human DR5 antigen.

Example 22. Reactivity of TRA-8 to various DR5 molecules

In order to determine the reactivity of TRA-8 to various DR5 molecules, the reactivity of TRA-8 is examined using activated lymphocytes as follows.

First, peripheral blood samples are taken from a human (30 ml), marmoset (3 ml), and cynomolgus monkey (20 ml). The blood samples had 1 ml of heparin (Novoheparin; Novo) added to them and the samples are then slowly layered over an equal volume of Ficoll-Paque PLUS solution ((Amersham Pharmacia Biotech.) specific gravity: 1.077 for all except cynomolgus monkey, which had a specific gravity of 1.072) and centrifuged at 1,700 r.p.m. for 30 minutes in order to obtain a fraction of peripheral blood mononuclear cells. This mononuclear cell fraction is

washed twice with Hanks' balanced salt solution and then suspended in RPMI 1640 medium with 10% v/v FCS to a cell density of 1 x 10^6 cells/ml. Phytohemagglutinin-P (PHA-P, Sigma Chemicals, Co.) is added to the resulting suspension to a final concentration of 5 μg/ml and the sample incubated at 37°C under 5% v/v CO_2 for 24 hours. After this time, the cells are recovered by centrifugation, washed and resuspended in RPMI 1640 medium containing 10% v/v FCS. Then, to activate the recovered cells, interleukin-2 (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech.) is added to the suspension to a final concentration of 10 units/ml, and this is incubated at 37°C under 5% v/v CO_2 for 72 hours.

An amount of the activated preparation calculated to contain 1 x 10^6 activated lymphocyte cells is placed in a test tube and either suspended in 50 μl of 0.5, 1, 5, 10 μg/ml of TRA-8 in PBS or 50 μl of PBS alone. The resulting suspension is allowed to stand on ice for 1 hour, after which the cells are washed 3 times with aliquots of 500 μl of PBS and then suspended in 50 μl of 20 μg/ml FITC-labeled anti-mouse IgG antibody (Bioresource) in PBS. Using the cells suspended in 500 μl of PBS as controls, the fluorescence intensities are measured, using a flow cytometer (FACSCalibur; Becton Dickinson).

Distributions of cell numbers by fluorescence intensity are obtained and the proportions of the numbers of the stained cells to those of total cells are calculated. Further, each Kd value is calculated using the concentration of TRA-8 and the proportions of the numbers of the stained cells to those of total cells. Each frequency of reactivity to activated lymphocytes of human, marmoset, and cynomologus monkey is almost same. Accordingly, TRA-8 is able to bind a wide range of primate DR5 including human against which TRA-8 is originally prepared.

Example 23. Escalating dose study of TRA-8 in marmosets

An escalating dose preliminary toxicity study of TRA-8 is performed using 1 male and 1 female marmoset. Three sets of single intravenous dosing, which are separated by a 7-day withdrawal period, are carried out. The dose of TRA-8 is set at 50, 250 and 1250 μg/body. Forty-eight hours after each treatment, blood is collected

from the femoral vein and the plasma is prepared. Plasma aspartate aminotransferase and alanine aminotransferase activities are measured using an analyzer (FUJI DRI-CHEM: Fuji Film Medical Co., Ltd.). All blood is taken without any anesthetization. As a result, no evidences indicating hepatic injury are noted in plasma biochemical examination after each treatment.

Example 24. *In vitro* and *in vivo* pharmacological studies of TRA-8 against cancer cells

In order to determine whether TRA-8 has the therapeutic efficacy in anti-cancer therapy, *in vitro* killing activity of TRA-8 using various cancer cell lines is examined as follows.

Various cancer cells (2-8 x 10^3 cells/50 µl) cultured in RPMI1640 medium (for Jurkat), DMEM medium (for HCT-116), MEM-R (for WiDr), or DMEM-F12 (for COL2-Jck) obtained from Gibco BRL with 10% FCS (Gibco BRL) at 37°C in the presence of 5% CO_2 are dispensed into each well of a 96-well microplate (Sumitomo Bakelite). TRA-8 are adjusted to have the concentration of the final product of interest of 100 ng/ml with medium containing 10% FCS. The TRA-8 solution (100 ng/ml) is used to produce serial dilutions by repeating serial 2-fold dilution with medium containing 10% FCS. Each of the diluted TRA-8 solution is added to each well at 50 µl per well and incubated at 37°C. After reacting at 37°C for 72 hours, 50 µl of 25 µM PMS (phenazine methosulfate; Sigma Chemical Co.) containing 1 mg/ml XTT is added (final concentrations of 250 µg/ml for XTT and 5 µM for PMS). After incubating for 3 hours, the absorbance at 450 nm of each well is measured to calculate the cell viability by using the reduction ability of mitochondria as the index.

The viability of the cells in each well is calculated according to the following formula:

$$\text{Viability (\%)} = 100 \times (a-b) / (c-b)$$

wherein "a" is the measurement of a test well, "b" is the measurement of a well with no cells, and "c" is the measurement of a well with no antibody added.

The results are shown in Table 3, below.

Table 3

Cells	ED50 (μg/ml)
Jurkat	0.001 - 0.01
HCT-116	0.004 - 0.02
WiDr	0.007 - 0.03
COL2-Jck	2.28

Various cancer cell lines are strongly induced apoptosis by TRA-8 under the *in vitro* conditions.

Furthermore, the *in vivo* anti-tumor effect of TRA-8 in nude mice transplanted with WiDr cells is determined, because TRA-8 is not cross-reactive with murine DR5.

TRA-8 anti-human DR5 antibody is administered to nude mice bearing human xenografts that express the human DR5 molecule. The mice used were 6 week-old BALb/c nude/nude mice (female, from Clea Japan Inc.), which were transplanted with human colon cancer cell lines WiDr (5 mm^3). At one day after tumor transplantation, these transplanted mice are daily treated with the intra-articular injection of TRA-8 (5 μg/body) to 14 times. WiDr tumor growth is daily determined by the size of the tumor mass. The results are shown in Table 4, below.

Table 4

	8 days	**11 days**	**15 days**	**18 days**	**22 days**	**25 days**
Control (PBS)	196	249	469	584	833	1193
SD	±55	±77	±149	±230	±274	±419
TRA-8	158	97	155	195	365	530
SD	±78	±30	±60	±58	±91	±135

In this model, while all untreated animals exhibited visible tumor growth, tumor growth in TRA-8 treated animals is inhibited as demonstrated by the size of tumor. This result indicated that TRA-8 is effective in the elimination of tumor cells *in vivo*.

Example 25. Combination study of TRA-8

Human prostate cancer cell line PC-3 is obtained from American Tissue Culture Collection (ATCC) and maintained in F-12K Nutrient Mixture (21127-022, Gibco BRL) containing 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS, Hyclone), 1% L-Glutamine-200 mM (25030-149, Gibco BRL) and 0.5% Penicillin Streptomycin Solution (P-7539, Sigma). RPMI1640 medium (MED-008, IWAKI) supplemented with 10% FBS and 0.5% Penicillin Streptomycin Solution is used in the following experiment. Exponentially growing PC-3 cells are collected by trypsinization and washed twice with fresh medium. The cells are then counted, resuspended in fresh medium at a density of 5×10^4 cells/ml and distributed in triplicate into flat-bottomed 96 well plates (3598, Corning-Coster) in a total volume of 100 µl/well one day before the start of the experiment. A representative anti-cancer drug, Paclitaxel (169-18611, Wako) dissolved in dimethylsulfoxide (10 mg/ml) is diluted in fresh medium and then added to the 96-well plates containing the cells at 50 µl/well. The final concentrations of dimethylsulfoxide are less than 0.1%. After incubation for 24 hr at 37°C in 5% CO_2 atmosphere, TRA-8 diluted in fresh medium is added to the wells. After incubation for a further 24 hr, 50 µl of Minimum Essential Medium (11095-098, Gibco BRL) containing 1 mg/ml of XTT and 25 mM of PMS is added to the wells and the plates are incubated for 6 hr. OD450 is then measured by SPECTRA MAX 250 (Molecular Devices) and the cell viability is calculated as follows.

Cell viability (%) = (OD450 for the well containing cells treated with Taxol and/or TRA-8 (agent(s)) - OD450 for the well containing neither cells nor agent) x 100 / (OD450 for the well containing cells with no agent –OD450 for the well containing neither cells nor agent)

The result of the above assay for TRA-8 combined with a representative anti-cancer drug, Paclitaxel, is followed. Paclitaxel reduced the cell viability of PC-3 cells but more than 40% of the signals indicating viable cancer cells still remained at concentrations of up to 200 nM. Notably, the addition of 0.1 ng/ml of TRA-8 greatly decreased the cell viability of the cancer cells, up to 10%, even though no

reduction in cell viability is seen after a single application of TRA-8 at this concentration. This result clearly indicates that TRA-8 exhibited anti-cancer activity synergistically when combined with other anti-cancer drugs.

Example 26. Analysis of Other Type Humanized Antibodies of TRA-8

(1) Designing Humanized Antibodies

Construction of a humanized version of TRA-8 is performed by the method generally known as CDR grafting. mAB58'CL antibody is used as an acceptor as described in Reference Example 2 and the CDR regions of TRA-8 antibody is grafted on the acceptor. In the framework region, some amino acids are grafted on the acceptor from either TRA-8 or human consensus sequences by the criteria given by Queen et al. (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86, 10029-10033, (1989)) and humanized TRA-8 sequences are constructed as described hereinbelow.

(2) Construction of Plasmid Carrying the Heavy Chain Variable Region DNA of Other Types Humanized or Mouse TRA-8

As shown in SEQ ID No. 56 of the Sequence Listing, H1 type-humanization of the amino acid sequences of the heavy chain of the mouse anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 entailed replacing the 3rd amino acid (methionine), the 13th amino acid (lysine), the 19th amino acid (lysine), the 40th amino acid (threonine), the 42nd amino acid (glutamic acid), the 44th amino acid (arginine), the 84th amino acid (serine), the 88th amino acid (serine), the 93rd amino acid (methionine), the 114th amino acid (threonine), the 115th amino acid (leucine) with glutamine, glutamine, arginine, alanine, glycine, glycine, asparagine, alanine, valine, leucine, and valine, respectively.

As shown in SEQ ID No. 59 of the Sequence Listing, H3 type-humanization of the amino acid sequences of the heavy chain of the mouse anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 entailed replacing the 13th amino acid (lysine), the 19th amino acid (lysine), the 40th amino acid (threonine), the 42nd amino acid (glutamic acid), the 44th amino acid (arginine), the 88th amino acid (serine), the 93rd amino acid (methionine), the 114th amino acid (threonine), the 115th amino acid (leucine) with

glutamine, arginine, alanine, glycine, glycine, alanine, valine, leucine, and valine, respectively.

As shown in SEQ ID No. 60 of the Sequence Listing, H4 type-humanization of the amino acid sequences of the heavy chain of the mouse anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 entailed replacing the 13th amino acid (lysine), the 19th amino acid (lysine), the 88th amino acid (serine), the 93rd amino acid (methionine), the 114th amino acid (threonine), the 115th amino acid (leucine) with glutamine, arginine, alanine, valine, leucine, and valine, respectively.

As shown in SEQ ID No. 61 of the Sequence Listing, the plasmid carrying the heavy chain variable region DNA of chimeric TRA-8 is designated as "M type". In addition, humanized TRA-8 described in Example 17 and 18 is designated as "H2 type".

The plasmids carrying DNA encoding heavy chain variable region of humanized or chimeric TRA-8 are constructed as follows.

PCR is used to construct the following DNA sequences, each of which comprised described above:

The following 24 oligonucleotide are synthesized:

5'- ttggataagc ttggcttgac ctcaccatgg gatggagctg tatcatcctc ttcttggtag caacagctac aggtgtccac -3' (A; SEQ ID No. 32);

5'- tctgaagtaa tgctggtgga gtctggggga ggcttagtac agcctggagg gtccctgaga ctctcctgtg cagcctctgg -3' (B; SEQ ID No. 33);

5'- tctgaagtac agctggtgga gtctggggga ggcttagtac agcctggagg gtccctgaga ctctcctgtg cagcctctgg -3' (B2; SEQ ID No. 57);

5'- tctgaagtaa tgctggtgga gtctggggga ggcttagtaa agcctggagg gtccctgaaa ctctcctgtg cagcctctgg -3' (B3; SEQ ID No. 66);

5'- attcactttc agtagttatg taatgtcttg ggttcggcag gcaccaggga agggtctgga gtgggttgca accattagta -3' (C; SEQ ID No. 34);

5'- attcactttc agtagttatg taatgtcttg ggttcggcag actccagaga agaggctgga gtgggttgca accattagta -3' (C2; SEQ ID No. 64);

5'- gtggtggtag ttacacctac tatccagaca gtgtgaaggg ccgattcacc atctccagag acaatgccaa gaacaccctg -3' (D; SEQ ID No. 35);

5'- tatctgcaaa tgaacagtct gagagcagag gacacggctg tttattactg tgcaagaagg ggtgactcta tgattacgac -3' (E; SEQ ID No. 36);

5'- tatctgcaaa tgagcagtct gagagcagag gacacggctg tttattactg tgcaagaagg ggtgactcta tgattacgac -3' (E2; SEQ ID No. 62);

5'- tatctgcaaa tgagcagtct gagatctgag gacacggcta tgtattactg tgcaagaagg ggtgactcta tgattacgac -3' (E3; SEQ ID No. 67);

5'- ggactactgg ggccaaggga ccctggtcac agtctcctca gcctccacc aagggcccat cggtc -3' (F; SEQ ID No. 37);

5'- ggactactgg ggccaaggga ccactctcac agtctcctca gcctccacc aagggcccat cggtc -3' (F2; SEQ ID No. 68);

5'- ctaccaagaa gaggatgata cagctccatc ccatggtgag gtcaagccaa gcttatccaa -3' (G; SEQ ID No. 38);

5'- tctcagggac cctccaggct gtactaagcc tcccccagac tccaccagca ttacttcaga gtggacacct gtagctgttg -3' (H; SEQ ID No. 39);

5'- tctcagggac cctccaggct gtactaagcc tcccccagac tccaccagct gtacttcaga gtggacacct gtagctgttg -3' (H2; SEQ ID No. 58);

5'- tttcagggac cctccaggct ttactaagcc tcccccagac tccaccagca ttacttcaga gtggacacct gtagctgttg -3' (H3; SEQ ID No. 69);

5'- tccagaccct tccctggtgc ctgccgaacc caagacatta cataactact gaaagtgaat ccagaggctg cacaggagag -3' (I; SEQ ID No. 40);

5'- tccagcctct tctctggagt ctgccgaacc caagacatta cataactact gaaagtgaat ccagaggctg cacaggagag -3' (I2; SEQ ID No. 65);

5'- ctctggagat ggtgaatcgg cccttcacac tgtctggata gtaggtgtaa ctaccaccac tactaatggt tgcaacccac -3' (J; SEQ ID No. 41);

5'- ccttcttgca cagtaataaa cagccgtgtc ctctgctctc agactgttca tttgcagata cagggtgttc ttggcattgt -3' (K; SEQ ID No. 42);

5'- ccttcttgca cagtaataaa cagccgtgtc ctctgctctc agactgttca tttgcagata cagggtgttc ttggcattgt -3' (K2; SEQ ID No. 63);

5'- ccttcttgca cagtaataca tagccgtgtc ctcagatctc agactgctca tttgcagata cagggtgttc ttggcattgt -3' (K3; SEQ ID No. 70);

5'- gaccgatggg cccttggtgg aggctgagga gactgtgacc agggtccctt ggccccagta gtccgtcgta atcatagagt cacc -3' (L; SEQ ID No. 43) and

5'- gaccgatggg cccttggtgg aggctgagga gactgtgaga gtggtccctt ggccccagta gtccgtcgta atcatagagt cacc -3' (L2; SEQ ID No. 71).

The following 2 PCR primers are synthesized as described above:

5'- ttggataagc ttggcttgac -3' (P1; SEQ ID No. 44); and

5'- gaccgatggg cccttggtgg a -3' (P2; SEQ ID No. 45).

The synthesis of H1 type DNA encoding a polypeptide chain comprising a secretion signal sequence, a variable region of humanized TRA-8 heavy chain and the 8 amino acid residues at the N-terminus of the IgG-CH1 region is performed using a combination of PCR respectively.

The H1 type-DNA fragment is prepared as follows.

Composition of the PCR reaction solution:

oligonucleotide A, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide B2, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide C, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide D, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide E, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide F, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide G, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide H2, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide I, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide J, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide K, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide L, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide primer P1, 2 μM;

oligonucleotide primer P2, 2 μM;

10 X Pyrobest buffer II, 10 μl;

dNTP mix, 8 μl;

Pyrobest DNA polymerase, 0.5 μl; and

Redistilled water to a final volume of 50 μl.

The PCR reaction is conducted as follows. The solution is first heated at 94°C for 5 minutes, after which a cycle of heating to 98°C for 10 second, 55°C for 30 second and 72°C for 1 minute, is repeated 7 times. After completion of this procedure, the reaction solution is heated at 72°C for 15 minutes.

After phenol extraction and ethanol precipitation, the resulting DNA precipitate is vacuum-dried, dissolved in a minimum of redistilled water, and separated by 3% agarose gel electrophoresis. After electrophoresis, the gel is stained with a 1 μg/ml aqueous solution of ethidium bromide to allow detection of DNA under UV light. The DNA bands corresponding to H1 type-DNA is cut out using a razor blade and eluted from the gel using Geneclean Spin Kit (BIO 101, CA, USA). After phenol extraction, the eluted DNA is then concentrated by centrifugation at 7,500 X g, followed by ethanol precipitation, and finally dissolved in 5 μl of distilled water.

The synthesis of H3 type DNA encoding a polypeptide chain comprising a secretion signal sequence, a variable region of humanized TRA-8 heavy chain and the 8 amino acid residues at the N-terminus of the IgG-CH1 region is performed using a combination of PCR respectively.

The H3 type-DNA fragment is prepared as follows.

Composition of the PCR reaction solution:

oligonucleotide A, 10 pmol;

oligonucleotide B, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide C, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide D, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide E2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide F, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide G, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide H, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide I, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide J, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide K2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide L, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide primer P1, 2 μM;
oligonucleotide primer P2, 2 μM;
10 X Pyrobest buffer II, 10 μl;
dNTP mix, 8 μl;
Pyrobest DNA polymerase, 0.5 μl; and
Redistilled water to a final volume of 50 μl.

The PCR reaction is conducted as follows. The solution is first heated at 94°C for 5 minutes, after which a cycle of heating to 98°C for 10 second, 55°C for 30 second and 72°C for 1 minute, is repeated 7 times. After completion of this procedure, the reaction solution is heated at 72°C for 15 minutes.

After phenol extraction and ethanol precipitation, the resulting DNA precipitate is vacuum-dried, dissolved in a minimum of redistilled water, and separated by 3% agarose gel electrophoresis. After electrophoresis, the gel is stained with a 1 μg/ml aqueous solution of ethidium bromide to allow detection of DNA under UV light. The DNA bands corresponding to H3 type-DNA is cut out using a razor blade and eluted from the gel using Geneclean Spin Kit. After phenol

extraction, the eluted DNA is then concentrated by centrifugation at 7,500 X g, followed by ethanol precipitation, and finally dissolved in 5 μl of distilled water.

The synthesis of H4 type DNA encoding a polypeptide chain comprising a secretion signal sequence, a variable region of humanized TRA-8 heavy chain and the 8 amino acid residues at the N-terminus of the IgG-CH1 region is performed using a combination of PCR respectively.

The H4 type-DNA fragment is prepared as follows.

Composition of the PCR reaction solution:

oligonucleotide A, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide B, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide C2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide D, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide E2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide F, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide G, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide H, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide I2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide J, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide K2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide L, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide primer P1, 2 μM;
oligonucleotide primer P2, 2 μM;
10 X Pyrobest buffer II, 10 μl;
dNTP mix, 8 μl;
Pyrobest DNA polymerase, 0.5 μl; and
Redistilled water to a final volume of 50 μl.

The PCR reaction is conducted as follows. The solution is first heated at 94°C for 5 minutes, after which a cycle of heating to 98°C for 10 second, 55°C for

30 second and 72°C for 1 minute, is repeated 7 times. After completion of this procedure, the reaction solution is heated at 72°C for 15 minutes.

After phenol extraction and ethanol precipitation, the resulting DNA precipitate is vacuum-dried, dissolved in a minimum of redistilled water, and separated by 3% agarose gel electrophoresis. After electrophoresis, the gel is stained with a 1 μg/ml aqueous solution of ethidium bromide to allow detection of DNA under UV light. The DNA bands corresponding to H4 type-DNA is cut out using a razor blade and eluted from the gel using Geneclean Spin Kit. After phenol extraction, the eluted DNA is then concentrated by centrifugation at 7,500 X g, followed by ethanol precipitation, and finally dissolved in 5 μl of distilled water.

The synthesis of M type DNA encoding a polypeptide chain comprising a secretion signal sequence, a variable region of chimeric TRA-8 heavy chain and the 8 amino acid residues at the N-terminus of the IgG-CH1 region is performed using a combination of PCR respectively.

The M type-DNA fragment is prepared as follows.

Composition of the PCR reaction solution:

oligonucleotide A, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide B3, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide C2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide D, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide E3, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide F2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide G, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide H3, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide I2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide J, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide K3, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide L2, 10 pmol;
oligonucleotide primer P1, 2 μM;

oligonucleotide primer P2, 2 μM;

10 X Pyrobest buffer II, 10 μl;

dNTP mix, 8 μl;

Pyrobest DNA polymerase, 0.5 μl; and

Redistilled water to a final volume of 50 μl.

The PCR reaction is conducted as follows. The solution is first heated at 94°C for 5 minutes, after which a cycle of heating to 98°C for 10 second, 55°C for 30 second and 72°C for 1 minute, is repeated 7 times. After completion of this procedure, the reaction solution is heated at 72°C for 15 minutes.

After phenol extraction and ethanol precipitation, the resulting DNA precipitate is vacuum-dried, dissolved in a minimum of redistilled water, and separated by 3% agarose gel electrophoresis. After electrophoresis, the gel is stained with a 1 μg/ml aqueous solution of ethidium bromide to allow detection of DNA under UV light. The DNA bands corresponding to M type-DNA is cut out using a razor blade and eluted from the gel using Geneclean Spin Kit. After phenol extraction, the eluted DNA is then concentrated by centrifugation at 7,500 X g, followed by ethanol precipitation, and finally dissolved in 5 μl of distilled water.

The resulting, each extracted DNA (H1 type, H3 type, H4 type, and M type) is cloned using pGEM-T Easy vector (Promega) as follows:

The DNA fragment recovered from the PCR reaction (H1, H3, H4 or M), 5 μl;

10 X Taq polymerase buffer, 1 μl;

dNTP mixture, 1 μl

Taq polymerase (5 unit/ml), 1 μl; and

redistilled water to a final volume of 10 μl.

After the above each solution is reacted at 70°C for 30 minutes, each DNA solution and pGEM-T Easy vector are ligated using a DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Shuzo Co., Ltd.) using the manufacturer's protocol.

After 4 hours incubation at 15°C, 2 μl of the incubated reaction solution is mixed with 100 μl of competent *E. coli* strain JM109 at a cell density of 1-2 x 10^9 cells/ml (Takara Shuzo Co., Ltd.), and the mixture is kept on ice for 30 minutes, then at 42°C for 30 seconds, and again on ice for 1 minute. Then, 500 μl of SOC medium (2% v/v tryptone, 0.5% w/v yeast extract, 0.05% w/v sodium chloride, 2.5 mM w/v potassium chloride, 1 mM magnesium chloride, and 20 mM glucose) is added the mixture, which is incubated for a further hour, with shaking. Transformant strains are then isolated, and plasmid DNA is prepared from the strains as described in "Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual". The nucleotide sequence of this DNA encoding the heavy chain of humanized or mouse TRA-8 is confirmed by the dideoxy method, respectively (Sanger, F. S., et al., (1977), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 74:5463-5467) using 3700 DNA Analyzer (ABI PRISM; Perkin Elmer Applied Biosystems, Japan).

The resulting plasmid is designated pHA15 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the H1-type heavy chain of humanized TRA-8), pHC10 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the H3-type heavy chain of humanized TRA-8), pHD21 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the H4-type heavy chain of humanized TRA-8), and pM11 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the heavy chain of chimeric TRA-8). The transformant *E coli* strains harboring these plasmid, designated as *E. coli* JM109/pHA15, *E. coli* JM109/pHC10, *E. coli* JM109/pHD21, and *E. coli* JM109/pM11 were deposited with International Patent Organism Depositary, National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 1-1, Higashi 1 chome Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki-ken, 305-5466, Japan on April 20, 2001, in accordance with the Budapest Treaty for the Deposit of Microorganisms, and was accorded the accession number FERM BP-7555, FERM BP-7557, FERM BP-7558, and FERM BP-7559, respectively.

(3) Construction of Expression Plasmids Carrying the Heavy Chain Variable Region DNA of Several Types Humanized or Mouse TRA-8

Recombinant expression vector for animal cells are constructed by inserting the DNA encoding the heavy chain of H1 type, H3 type, and H4 type humanized or M type chimeric TRA-8 (cloned in above) as follows.

One μg of plasmid pSRHHH3 (European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1) carrying the heavy chain variable region of humanized anti-Fas monoclonal antibody HFE7A and human IgG1 constant region genomic DNA, an expression vector for mammalian cells, is digested with the restriction enzymes HindIII and ApaI, and separated by 3% agarose gel electrophoresis. After electrophoresis, the gel is stained with a 1 μg/ml aqueous solution of ethidium bromide to allow detection of DNA under UV light. The vector DNA bands containing human IgG1 constant region genomic DNA without the heavy chain variable region of humanized HFE7A are cut out using a razor blade and eluted from the gel using Geneclean Spin Kit. After phenol extraction, the eluted DNA is then concentrated by centrifugation at 7,500 X g, followed by ethanol precipitation, and finally dissolved in 5 μl of distilled water and then dephosphorylated using CIP. The resulting digested, dephosphorylated plasmid (100 ng) is ligated with 1 μg of the DNA fragment of pHA15, pHC10, pHD21, or pM11 containing the DNA encoding the heavy chain variable region of humanized or chimeric TRA-8, which had also been digested with HindIII and ApaI, using a DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Shuzo Co., Ltd.). The ligation mixture is then used to transform *E. coli* JM109, which is then plated on LB agar plates containing 50 μg/ml ampicillin.

The transformants obtained by this method are cultured in 2 ml of liquid LB medium containing 50 μg/ml ampicillin at 37°C overnight, and plasmid DNA is subsequently extracted from the resulting culture by the alkaline-SDS method.

The extracted plasmid DNA is digested with HindIII and ApaI, and subjected to 3% w/v agarose gel electrophoresis to confirm the presence or absence of the insert of the DNA encoding the heavy chain variable region of humanized or

chimeric TRA-8. The insertion and orientation of the desired DNA fragment in the vector is confirmed by DNA sequencing using a gene sequence analyzer (ABI Prism 3700 DNA Analyzer; Applied Biosystems). The resulting expression plasmids carrying cDNA encoding the heavy chain of humanized or chimeric TRA-8 were designated pHA15-1, pHC10-3, pHD21-1, and pM11-1, respectively.

(4) Construction of Vectors for the Humanized Light Chains

(4.1) Construction of an Expression Vector for the Light Chain of the Humanized Antibody (LM1 type)

As shown in SEQ ID No. 72 of the Sequence Listing, other humanization (LM1 type) of the amino acid sequences of the light chain of the mouse anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 entailed replacing the 3rd amino acid (valine), 8th amino acid (histidine), 9th amino acid (lysine), 10th amino acid (phenylalanine), 11th amino acid (methionine), 13th amino acid (threonine), 20th amino acid (serine), 42nd amino acid (glutamine), 43rd (serine), 60th amino acid (aspartic acid), 63rd amino acid (threonine), 77th amino acid (asparagine), 78th amino acid (valine), 80th amino acid (serine) 83rd amino acid (leucine), 85th amino acid (aspartic acid), 87th amino acid (phenylalanine),and 99th amino acid (glycine) 103rd amino acid (leucine) and 108th amino acid (alanine) from the N-terminus of the amino acid sequence of the TRA-8 light chain are replaced with glutamine, proline, serine, serine, leucine, alanine, threonine, lysine, alanine, serine, serine, serine, leucine, proline, phenylalanine, threonine, tyrosine, glutamine, valine and threonine respectively. The resulting sequence is designated LM1.

Expression plasmids carrying this type of humanized light chain amino acid sequences of the anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 (LM1 type, SEQ ID No. 72 of the Sequence Listing) are constructed as follows.

1) Synthesis of primers for preparing the variable and constant regions of the light chain of humanized TRA-8 (LM1 type)

DNA coding for the LM1 polypeptide chain (SEQ ID No. 72 of the Sequence Listing), each of which is a fusion of the variable region of humanized

anti-DR5 antibody TRA-8 light chain (LM1 type) and the constant region of the human Ig light chain (κ chain), are respectively synthesized by using combinations of PCR.

Further to 7AL1P (SEQ ID No. 47), 7ALCN (SEQ ID No. 48), HKCDF11 (SEQ ID No. 50), HKCDR12 (SEQ ID No. 51), HKCDF22 (SEQ ID No. 52), HKCDR22 (SEQ ID No. 53), and HKCF12 (SEQ ID No. 54).

The following oligonucleotide primers are synthesized for PCR:

5'- gtcccccaca gatgcagaca aagaacttgg agattgggtc atctgaatgt caccagtgga -3' (HKSPR12; SEQ ID No. 77).

2) Construction of plasmid pCR3.1/LM1-2 (cloning of humanized TRA-8 light chain type LM1)

LM1-DNA fragment coding for the amino acid sequence as defined in SEQ ID No. 72 of the same is prepared by performing 2-step PCR, inserted into a plasmid vector and cloned in *E. coli*.

a) First step PCR

LM1-F1-DNA fragment coding for a secretion signal sequence and a portion of FRL_1 region with a Hind III restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 5'-end is prepared under the following conditions. The template plasmids, pHSGHM17 and pSRPDHH, are obtained by following the description in a European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pHSGHM17 DNA, 25 ng
oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer HKSPR12, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5 μl
10×PCR buffer, 5 μl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase (PerkinElmer), 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 μl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM1-F2-DNA fragment coding for a portion of FRL_1, $CDRL_1$, FRL_2, and $CDRL_2$ is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pL28 DNA, 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer HKCDF11, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer HKCDR12, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10×PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM1-F3-DNA fragment coding for CDRL2, FRL_3, and a portion of $CDRL_3$ is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pSRPDHH DNA, 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer HKCDF22, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer HKCDR22, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10×PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM1-F4-DNA fragment coding for $CDRL_3$, FRL_4 and the constant region with an EcoR I restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 3'-end is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pSRPDHH DNA, 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer HKCF12, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10×PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The amplified DNA fragments after PCR are separated by 5% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. The gel after electrophoresis is stained with 1 µg/ml of ethidium bromide to detect the produced DNA under UV light. The respective DNA bands thus detected are excised with a razor

b) Second step PCR

LM1-DNA in which above described LM1-F1-DNA, LM1-F2-DNA, LM1-F3-DNA and LM1-F4-DNA fragments are fused is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

Gel fragment of LM1-F1-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,

Gel fragment of LM1-F2-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,

Gel fragment of LM1-F3-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,
Gel fragment of LM1-F4-DNA prepared in the first step PCR
oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5.0 µl
10×PCR buffer, 5.0 µl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The thus prepared LM1-DNA fragment is inserted into plasmid pCR3.1DNA using Eukaryotic TA cloning Kit (InVitrogen) following the manufacturer's protocol and introduced into the competent *E. Coli* TOP10F' contained in the kit. The nucleotide sequences of these DNAs encoding the light chain of humanized TRA-8 (LM1 type) are confirmed by the dideoxy method (Sanger, F. S., et al., (1977), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 74:5463-5467) using 3700 DNA Analyzer (ABI PRISM; Perkin Elmer Applied Biosystems, Japan).

The resulting plasmids are designated pCR3.1/LM1-2 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain variable region of humanized TRA-8 (LM1 type) and a human Ig light chain constant region).

The obtained plasmid pCR3.1/LM1-2 containing LM1-DNA fragment is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One µg of cloning plasmid pHSG399 DNA is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pHSG399 DNA and LM1-DNA fragment, that had been digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with

the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar medium containing 0.1 mM IPTG, 0.1% X-Gal and 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol (final concentrations). The white transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The extracted plasmid DNA is digested with Hind III and EcoR I, and then a clone carrying LM1-DNA fragment is selected by 1% agarose gel electrophoresis.

As a result of the above procedure, plasmid pHSG/M1-2-2 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM1 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is obtained. The transformant *E coli* strain harboring these plasmid, designated as *E. coli* DH5α/pHSG/M1-2-2 was deposited with International Patent Organism Depositary, National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 1-1, Higashi 1 chome Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki-ken, 305-5466, Japan on April 20, 2001, in accordance with the Budapest Treaty for the Deposit of Microorganisms, and was accorded the accession number FERM BP-7562.

3) Construction of plasmid pSR/LM1-2 (expression plasmid for humanized LM1 TRA-8 light chain)

The obtained plasmid pHSG/M1-2- carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM1 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pSRPDHH DNA (European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1) is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pSRPDHH DNA and HindIII-EcoRI DNA fragment obtained from pHSG/M1-2-2 are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar. The transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 100 μg/ml ampicillin, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS

method. The insertion and orientation of the desired DNA fragment in pSRPDHH vector is confirmed by DNA sequencing using a gene sequence analyzer.

The resulting expression plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain of humanized LM1 TRA-8 is designated pSR/LM1-2.

(4.2) Construction of an Expression Vector for the Light Chain of the Humanized Antibody (LM3 type)

As shown in SEQ ID No. 73 of the Sequence Listing, other humanization (LM3 type) of the amino acid sequences of the light chain of the mouse anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 entailed replacing the 8th amino acid (histidine), 9th amino acid (lysine), 10th amino acid (phenylalanine), 11th amino acid (methionine), 13th amino acid (threonine), 20th amino acid (serine), 42nd amino acid (glutamine), 43rd amino acid (serine), 77th amino acid (asparagine), 78th amino acid (valine), 80th amino acid (serine) 83rd amino acid (leucine), 85th amino acid (aspartic acid), 87th amino acid (phenylalanine), 99th amino acid (glycine) 103rd amino acid (leucine) and 108th amino acid (alanine) from the N-terminus of the amino acid sequence of the TRA-8 light chain are replaced with proline, serine, serine, leucine, alanine, threonine, lysine, alanine, serine, leucine, proline, phenylalanine, threonine, tyrosine, glutamine, valine and threonine, respectively. The resulting sequence is designated LM3.

Expression plasmids carrying this type of humanized light chain amino acid sequences of the anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 (LM3 type, SEQ ID No. 73 of the Sequence Listing) are constructed as follows.

1) Synthesis of primers for preparing the variable and constant regions of the light chain of humanized LM3 TRA-8

DNA coding for the LM3 polypeptide chain (SEQ ID No. 73 of the Sequence Listing), each of which is a fusion of the variable region of humanized anti-DR5 antibody TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of the human Ig light chain (κ chain), are respectively synthesized by using combinations of PCR.

Further to 7AL1P (SEQ ID No. 47) and 7ALCN (SEQ ID No. 48), the following oligonucleotide primers are synthesized for PCR:

5'- atctagttct cagagatgga gacagacaca atcctgctat gggtgctgct gctctgggtt ccagg -3' (MOD1F1; SEQ ID No. 78);

5'- cagcacccat agcaggattg tgtctgtctc catctctgag aactagatga gaggatgctt cttaagctt -3' (MOD1R1; SEQ ID No. 79);

5'- ctccactggt gacattgtga tgacccaatc tccaagttct ttgtctgcat ctgtggggga cagggtc -3' (MOD1F22; SEQ ID No. 80);

5'- acttggagat tgggtcatca caatgtcacc agtggagcct ggaacccaga gcag-3' (MOD1R22; SEQ ID No. 81);

5'-accatcacct gcaaggccag tcaggatgtg ggtactgctg tagcctggta ccaacagaaa ccaggaa -3' (MOD1F3; SEQ ID No. 82);

5'- tacagcagta cccacatcct gactggcctt gcaggtgatg gtgaccctgt cccccacaga tgcagacaaa ga -3' (MOD1R3; SEQ ID No. 83);

5'- aagcacccaa actcctcatc tattgggcat ccacccggca cactggggtc ccagataggt ttacaggcag t -3' (MOD1F42; SEQ ID No. 84);

5'- cccagtgtgc cgggtggatg cccaatagat gaggagtttg ggtgcttttc ctggtttctg ttggtaccag gc -3' (MOD1R4; SEQ ID No. 85);

5'- gggtctggga cagacttcac cctcaccatc tctagtctgc agccggagga ttttgcaacc tat -3'(MOD1F5; SEQ ID No. 86);

5'- actagagatg gtgagggtga agtctgtccc agacccactg cctgtaaacc tatctgggac -3' (MOD1R52; SEQ ID No. 87);

5'- tactgtcagc aatatagcag ctatcggacg ttcggtcaag gcaccaaggt ggaaatc -3' (MOD1F6; SEQ ID No. 88);

5'- cgtccgatag ctgctatatt gctgacagta ataggttgca aaatcctccg gctgcac -3' (MOD1R6; SEQ ID No. 89)

5'- aaacggactg tggctgcacc atctgtcttc atcttcccgc catctgatga g -3' (MOD1F7; SEQ ID No. 90);

5'- gaagatgaag acagatggtg cagccacagt ccgtttgatt tccaccttgg tgccttgacc gaa -3' (MOD1R7; SEQ ID No. 91); and

5'- agatttcaac tgctcatcag atggcgggaa (LR17; SEQ ID No. 101).

2) Construction of plasmid pCR3.1/LM3-3-44 (cloning of humanized TRA-8 light chain type LM3)

LM3-DNA fragment coding for the amino acid sequence as defined in SEQ ID No. 73 of the same is prepared by performing 2-step PCR, inserted into a plasmid vector and cloned in *E. coli*.

a) First step PCR

LM3-F31B-DNA fragment coding for a secretion signal sequence region with a Hind III restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 5'-end, FRL_1 $CDRL_1$, FRL_2, and $CDRL_2$, FRL_3, $CDRL_3$, FRL_4 and a portion of the constant region is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

oligonucleotide primer MOD1F1, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R1, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F22, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R22, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F3, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R3, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F42, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R4, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F5, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R52, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F6, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R6, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F7, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R7, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer LR17, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10× PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM3-F31C-DNA fragment coding for a portion of the constant region with an Eco R I restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 3'-end is prepared under the following conditions.

The template plasmids, pSRPDHH, is obtained by following the description in a European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pSRPDHH DNA, 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer MOD1F7, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10×PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The amplified DNA fragments after PCR are separated by 5% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. The gel after electrophoresis is stained with 1

μg/ml of ethidium bromide to detect the produced DNA under UV light. The respective DNA bands thus detected are excised with a razor.

b) Second step PCR

LM3-DNA in which above described LM3-F31B-DNA, and LM3-F31C-DNA fragments are fused is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

Gel fragment of LM3-F31B-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,
Gel fragment of LM3-F31C-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,
oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5.0 μl
10× PCR buffer, 5.0 μl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 μl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The thus prepared LM3-DNA fragment is inserted into plasmid pCR3.1DNA using Eukaryotic TA cloning Kit (InVitrogen) following the manufacturer's protocol and introduced into the competent *E. Coli* TOP10F' contained in the kit. The nucleotide sequences of these DNAs encoding the light chain of humanized LM3 TRA-8 are confirmed by the dideoxy method (Sanger, F. S., et al., (1977), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 74:5463-5467) using 3700 DNA Analyzer (ABI PRISM; Perkin Elmer Applied Biosystems, Japan).

The resulting plasmids are designated pCR3.1/LM3-3-44 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain variable region of humanized LM3 TRA-8 and a human Ig light chain constant region).

The obtained plasmid pCR3.1/LM3-3-44 containing LM3-DNA fragment is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pHSG399 DNA is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pHSG399 DNA and LM3-DNA fragment, that had been digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar medium containing 0.1 mM IPTG, 0.1% X-Gal and 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol (final concentrations). The white transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The extracted plasmid DNA is digested with Hind III and EcoR I, and then a clone carrying LM3-DNA fragment is selected by 1% agarose gel electrophoresis.

As a result of the above procedure, plasmid pHSG/M3-3-22 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM3 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is obtained. The transformant *E coli* strain harboring these plasmid, designated as *E. coli* DH5α/pHSG/M3-3-22 was deposited with International Patent Organism Depositary, National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 1-1, Higashi 1 chome Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki-ken, 305-5466, Japan on April 20, 2001, in accordance with the Budapest Treaty for the Deposit of Microorganisms, and was accorded the accession number FERM BP-7564.

3) Construction of plasmid pSR/LM3-3-44-10 (expression plasmid for humanized LM3 TRA-8 light chain)

The obtained plasmid pHSG/M3-3-22 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM3 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pSRPDHH DNA (European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1) is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pSRPDHH DNA and HindIII-EcoRI DNA fragment obtained from pHSG/M3-3-22 are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar. The transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 100 μg/ml ampicillin, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The insertion and orientation of the desired DNA fragment in pSRPDHH vector is confirmed by DNA sequencing using a gene sequence analyzer (ABI Prism 3700 DNA Analyzer; Applied Biosystems).

The resulting expression plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain of humanized LM3 TRA-8 is designated pSR/LM3-3-44-10.

(4.3) Construction of an Expression Vector for the Light Chain of the Humanized Antibody (LM4 type)

As shown in SEQ ID No. 74 of the Sequence Listing, other humanization (LM4 type) of the amino acid sequences of the light chain of the mouse anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 entailed replacing the 8th amino acid (histidine), 9th amino acid (lysine), 10th amino acid (phenylalanine), 11th amino acid (methionine), 13th amino acid (threonine), 20th amino acid (serine), 42nd amino acid (glutamine), 43rd amino acid (serine), 77th amino acid (asparagine), 78th amino acid (valine), 80th amino acid (serine) 83rd amino acid (leucine), 85th amino acid (aspartic acid), 99th amino acid (glycine) 103rd amino acid (leucine) and 108th amino acid (alanine) from the N-terminus of the amino acid sequence of the TRA-8 light chain are replaced with proline, serine, serine, leucine, alanine, threonine, lysine, alanine, serine, leucine, proline, phenylalanine, threonine, glutamine, valine and threonine respectively. The resulting sequence is designated LM4.

Expression plasmids carrying this type of humanized light chain amino acid sequences of the anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 (LM4 type) (SEQ ID No. 74 of the Sequence Listing) are constructed as follows.

1) Synthesis of primers for preparing the variable and constant regions of the light chain of humanized LM4 TRA-8

DNA coding for the LM4 polypeptide chain (SEQ ID No. 74 of the Sequence Listing), each of which is a fusion of the variable region of humanized anti-DR5 antibody TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of the human Ig light chain (κ chain), are respectively synthesized by using combinations of PCR.

Further to 7AL1P (SEQ ID No. 47), 7ALCN (SEQ ID No. 48), MOD1F1 (SEQ ID No. 78), MOD1R1 (SEQ ID No. 79), MOD1F22 (SEQ ID No. 80), MOD1R22 (SEQ ID No. 81), MOD1F3 (SEQ ID No. 82), MOD1R3 (SEQ ID No. 83), MOD1F42 (SEQ ID No. 84), MOD1R4 (SEQ ID No. 85), MOD1F5 (SEQ ID No. 86), MOD1R52 (SEQ ID No. 87), MOD1F7 (SEQ ID No. 90), and MOD1R7 (SEQ ID No. 91), LR17 (SEQ ID No. 101), the following oligonucleotide primers are synthesized for PCR:

5'- ttctgtcagc aatatagcag ctatcggacg ttcggtcaag gcaccaaggt ggaaatc -3'
(MOD1F62; SEQ ID No. 92)

5'- cgtccgatag ctgctatatt gctgacagaa ataggttgca aaatcctccg gctgcag -3'
(MOD1R62; SEQ ID No. 93)

2) Construction of plasmid pCR3.1/LM4-5-3 (cloning of humanized TRA-8 light chain type LM4)

LM4-DNA fragment coding for the amino acid sequence as defined in SEQ ID No. 74 of the same is prepared by performing 2-step PCR, inserted into a plasmid vector and cloned in *E. coli*.

a) First step PCR

LM4-F41B-DNA fragment coding for a secretion signal sequence region with a Hind III restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 5'-end, FRL_1, $CDRL_1$,

FRL_2, and $CDRL_2$, FRL_3, $CDRL_3$, FRL_4 and a portion of the constant region is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

oligonucleotide primer MOD1F1, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R1, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F22, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R22, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F3, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R3, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F42, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R4, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F5, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R52, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F62, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R62, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F7, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R7, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer LR17, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5 μl
10×PCR buffer, 5 μl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 μl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM4-F41C-DNA fragment coding for a portion of the constant region with an Eco R I restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 3'-end is prepared under the following conditions.

The template plasmids, pSRPDHH, are obtained by following the description in a European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pSRPDHH DNA, 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer MOD1F7, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10×PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The amplified DNA fragments after PCR are separated by 5% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. The gel after electrophoresis is stained with 1 µg/ml of ethidium bromide to detect the produced DNA under UV light. The respective DNA bands thus detected are excised with a razor blade.

b) Second step PCR

LM4-DNA in which above described LM4-F41B-DNA, and LM4-F41C-DNA fragments are fused is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

Gel fragment of LM4-F41B-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,

Gel fragment of LM4-F41C-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,

oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5.0 μl

10×PCR buffer, 5.0 μl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 μl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The thus prepared LM4-DNA fragment is inserted into plasmid pCR3.1DNA using Eukaryotic TA cloning Kit (InVitrogen) following the manufacturer's protocol and introduced into the competent *E. Coli* TOP10F' contained in the kit. The nucleotide sequences of these DNAs encoding the light chain of humanized LM4 TRA-8 are confirmed by the dideoxy method (Sanger, F. S., et al., (1977), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 74:5463-5467) using 3700 DNA Analyzer (ABI PRISM; Perkin Elmer Applied Biosystems, Japan).

The resulting plasmids are designated pCR3.1/LM4-5-3 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain variable region of humanized LM4 TRA-8 and a human Ig light chain constant region).

The obtained plasmid pCR3.1/LM4-5-3 containing LM4-DNA fragment is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pHSG399 DNA is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pHSG399 DNA and LM4-DNA fragment, that had been digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar medium containing 0.1 mM IPTG, 0.1% X-Gal and 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol (final concentrations). The white transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according

to the alkaline-SDS method. The extracted plasmid DNA is digested with Hind III and EcoR I, and then a clone carrying LM4-DNA fragment is selected by 1% agarose gel electrophoresis.

As a result of the above procedure, plasmid pHSG/M4-5-3-1 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM4 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is obtained. The transformant *E coli* strain harboring these plasmid, designated as *E. coli* DH5α/pHSG/M4-5-3-1 was deposited with International Patent Organism Depositary, National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 1-1, Higashi 1 chome Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki-ken, 305-5466, Japan on April 20, 2001, in accordance with the Budapest Treaty for the Deposit of Microorganisms, and was accorded the accession number FERM BP-7565.

3) Construction of plasmid pSR/LM4-5-3-3 (expression plasmid for humanized LM4 TRA-8 light chain)

The obtained plasmid pHSG/M4-5-3-1 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM4 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pSRPDHH DNA (European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1) is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pSRPDHH DNA and HindIII-EcoRI DNA fragment obtained from pHSG/M4-5-3-1 are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar. The transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 100 μg/ml ampicillin, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The insertion and orientation of the desired DNA fragment in pSRPDHH vector is confirmed by DNA sequencing using a gene sequence analyzer (ABI Prism 3700 DNA Analyzer; Applied Biosystems).

The resulting expression plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain of humanized LM4 TRA-8 is designated pSR/LM4-5-3-3.

(4.4) Construction of an Expression Vector for the Light Chain of the Humanized Antibody (LM5 type)

As shown in SEQ ID No. 75 of the Sequence Listing, other humanization (LM5 type) of the amino acid sequences of the light chain of the mouse anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 entailed replacing the 8th amino acid (histidine), 9th amino acid (lysine), 10th amino acid (phenylalanine), 11th amino acid (methionine), 13th amino acid (threonine), 20th amino acid (serine), 42nd amino acid (glutamine), 43rd amino acid (serine), 77th amino acid (asparagine), 78th amino acid (valine), 80th amino acid (serine) 83rd amino acid (leucine), 103rd amino acid (leucine) and 108th amino acid (alanine) from the N-terminus of the amino acid sequence of the TRA-8 light chain are replaced with proline, serine, serine, leucine, alanine, threonine, lysine, alanine, serine, leucine, proline, phenylalanine, valine and threonine respectively. The resulting sequence is designated LM5.

Expression plasmids carrying this type of humanized light chain amino acid sequences of the anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 (LM5 type) (SEQ ID No. 75 of the Sequence Listing) is constructed as follows.

1) Synthesis of primers for preparing the variable and constant regions of the light chain of humanized LM5 TRA-8

DNA coding for the LM5 polypeptide chain (SEQ ID No. 75 of the Sequence Listing), each of which is a fusion of the variable region of humanized anti-DR5 antibody TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of the human Ig light chain (κ chain), are respectively synthesized by using combinations of PCR.

Further to 7AL1P (SEQ ID No. 47), 7ALCN (SEQ ID No. 48), MOD1F1 (SEQ ID No. 78), MOD1R1 (SEQ ID No. 79), MOD1F22 (SEQ ID No. 80), MOD1R22 (SEQ ID No. 81), MOD1F3 (SEQ ID No. 82), MOD1R3 (SEQ ID No. 83), MOD1F42 (SEQ ID No. 84), MOD1R4 (SEQ ID No. 85), MOD1R52 (SEQ ID

No. 87), MOD1F7 (SEQ ID No. 90), and LR17 (SEQ ID No. 101), the following oligonucleotide primers are synthesized for PCR:

5'- gggtctggga cagacttcac cctcaccatc tctagtctgc agccggagga ttttgcagat tat -3'
(MOD1F52; SEQ ID No. 94)

5'- ttctgtcagc aatatagcag ctatcggacg ttcggtggag gcaccaaggt ggaaatc -3'
(MOD1F63; SEQ ID No. 95)

5'- cgtccgatag ctgctatatt gctgacagaa ataatctgca aaatcctccg gctgcag -3'
(MOD1R63; SEQ ID No. 96)

5'- gaagatgaag acagatggtg cagccacagt ccgtttgatt tccaccttgg tgcctccacc gaa-3'
(MOD1R72; SEQ ID No. 102)

2) Construction of plasmid pCR3.1/LM5-3-42 (cloning of humanized TRA-8 light chain type LM5)

LM5-DNA fragment coding for the amino acid sequence as defined in SEQ ID No. 75 of the same is prepared by performing 2-step PCR, inserted into a plasmid vector and cloned in *E. coli*.

a) First step PCR

LM5-F51B-DNA fragment coding for a secretion signal sequence region with a Hind III restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 5'-end, FRL_1, $CDRL_1$, FRL_2, $CDRL_2$, FRL_3, $CDRL_3$, FRL_4 and a portion of the constant region is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

oligonucleotide primer MOD1F1, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R1, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F22, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R22, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F3, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R3, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F42, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R4, 5 pmol

oligonucleotide primer MOD1F52, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R52, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F63, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R63, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F7, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MOD1R72, 5 pmol
oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer LR17, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl
10× PCR buffer, 5 µl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM5-F51C-DNA fragment coding for a portion of the constant region with an Eco R I restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 3'-end is prepared under the following conditions. The template plasmids, pSRPDHH, is obtained by following the description in an European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pSRPDHH DNA, 25 ng
oligonucleotide primer MOD1F7, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl
10×PCR buffer, 5 µl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The amplified DNA fragments after PCR are separated by 5% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. The gel after electrophoresis is stained with 1 μg/ml of ethidium bromide to detect the produced DNA under UV light. The respective DNA bands thus detected are excised with a razor blade.

b) Second step PCR

LM5-DNA in which above described LM5-F51B-DNA, and LM5-F51C-DNA fragments are fused is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

Gel fragment of LM5-F51B-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,
Gel fragment of LM5-F51C-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,
oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5.0 μl
10×PCR buffer, 5.0 μl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 μl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The thus prepared LM5-DNA fragment is inserted into plasmid pCR3.1DNA using Eukaryotic TA cloning Kit (InVitrogen) following the manufacturer's protocol and introduced into the competent *E. Coli* TOP10F' contained in the kit. The nucleotide sequences of these DNAs encoding the light chain of humanized LM5 TRA-8 are confirmed by the dideoxy method (Sanger, F. S., et al., (1977), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 74:5463-5467) using DNA analyzer.

The resulting plasmids are designated pCR3.1/LM5-3-42 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain variable region of humanized LM5 TRA-8 and a human Ig light chain constant region).

The obtained plasmid pCR3.1/LM5-3-42 containing LM5-DNA fragment is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pHSG399 DNA is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pHSG399 DNA and LM5-DNA fragment, that had been digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar medium containing 0.1 mM IPTG, 0.1% X-Gal and 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol (final concentrations). The white transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The extracted plasmid DNA is digested with Hind III and EcoR I, and then a clone carrying LM5-DNA fragment is selected by 1% agarose gel electrophoresis.

As a result of the above procedure, plasmid pHSG/M5-3-27 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM5 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is obtained.

3) Construction of plasmid pSR/LM5-3-27-1 (expression plasmid for humanized LM5 TRA-8 light chain)

The obtained plasmid pHSG/M5-3-27 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the humanized LM5 TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pSRPDHH DNA (European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1) is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pSRPDHH DNA and HindIII-EcoRI DNA fragment obtained from pHSG/M5-3-27 are ligated using

DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar. The transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 100 μg/ml ampicillin, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The insertion and orientation of the desired DNA fragment in pSRPDHH vector is confirmed by DNA sequencing using a gene sequence analyzer (ABI Prism 3700 DNA Analyzer; Applied Biosystems).

The resulting expression plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain of humanized LM5 TRA-8 is designated pSR/LM5-3-27-1.

(4.5) Construction of an Expression Vector for the Light Chain of the Humanized Antibody(chimera type)

The sequence shown in SEQ ID No. 76 of the Sequence Listing, the amino acid sequence of the light chain of chimera type TRA-8, is designated LM6.

Expression plasmids carrying this type of humanized light chain amino acid sequences of the anti-human DR5 antibody TRA-8 (LM6 type) (SEQ ID No. 75 of the Sequence Listing) is constructed as follows.

1) Synthesis of primers for preparing the variable and constant regions of the light chain of humanized LM6 TRA-8

DNA coding for the LM6 polypeptide chain (SEQ ID No. 75 of the Sequence Listing), each of which is a fusion of the variable region of mouse anti-DR5 antibody TRA-8 light chain (LM6 type) and the constant region of the human Ig light chain (κ chain), are respectively synthesized by using combinations of PCR.

Further to 7AL1P (SEQ ID No. 47) and 7ALCN (SEQ ID No. 48), the following oligonucleotide primers are synthesized for PCR:

5'- tgatgtggac atgaatttgt gagactgggt catcacaatg tcaccagtgg a -3' (HKSPR13; SEQ ID No. 97);

5'- tgggttccag gctccactgg tgacattgtg atgacccagt ctcacaaatt c -3' (MVF11; SEQ ID No. 98);

5'- aagacagatg gtgcagccac agcccgtttg atttccagct tggtgcctc -3' (MVR11; SEQ ID No. 99); and

5'- aagctggaaa tcaaacgggc tgtggctgca ccatctgtct tcatc -3'(MCF11; SEQ ID No. 100).

2) Construction of plasmid pCR3.1/LM6-1-16 (cloning of humanized TRA-8 light chain type LM6)

LM6-DNA fragment coding for the amino acid sequence as defined in SEQ ID No. 75 of the same is prepared by performing 2-step PCR, inserted into a plasmid vector and cloned in *E. coli*.

a) First step PCR

LM6-F1-DNA fragment coding for a secretion signal sequence and a portion of FRL_1 region with a Hind III restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 5'-end is prepared under the following conditions. The template plasmids, pHSGHM17 and pSRPDHH, are obtained by following the description in a European patent application EP 0 909 816 A1.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pHSGHM17 DNA, 25 ng

oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol

oligonucleotide primer HKSPR13, 50 pmol

dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl

10× PCR buffer, 5 µl

ampliTaq DNA polymerase (PerkinElmer), 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM6-F2-DNA fragment coding for a portion of FRL_1, $CDRL_1$, FRL_2, $CDRL_2$, FRL_3, $CDRL_3$, FRL_4 and a portion of the constant region is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pL28 DNA, 25 ng
oligonucleotide primer MVF11, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer MVR12, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl
10× PCR buffer, 5 µl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

LM6-F3-DNA fragment coding for a portion of FRL_4 and the constant region with an EcoR I restriction enzyme cleavage site added at the 3'-end is prepared under the following conditions.

Composition of the reaction solution:

plasmid pSRPDHH DNA, 25 ng
oligonucleotide primer MCF11, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5 µl
10×PCR buffer, 5 µl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 µl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The amplified DNA fragments after PCR are separated by 5% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. The gel after electrophoresis is stained with 1 μg/ml of ethidium bromide to detect the produced DNA under UV light. The respective DNA bands thus detected are excised with a razor blade.

b) Second step PCR

LM6-DNA in which above described LM6-F1-DNA, LM6-F2-DNA, and LM6-F3-DNA fragments are fused is prepared under the following conditions. Composition of the reaction solution:

Gel fragment of LM6-F1-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,
Gel fragment of LM6-F2-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,
Gel fragment of LM6-F3-DNA prepared in the first step PCR,
oligonucleotide primer 7AL1P, 50 pmol
oligonucleotide primer 7ALCN, 50 pmol
dNTPs cocktail, 5.0 μl
10×PCR buffer, 5.0 μl
ampliTaq DNA polymerase, 2.5 units

The reaction solution having the above composition is adjusted to a final volume of 50 μl by adding redistilled water and used in PCR.

PCR thermal conditions: Heating at 94°C for 2 minutes, after which a thermal cycle of 94°C for 1 minute, 55°C for 1 minute and 72°C for 2 minutes, repeated 30 times, followed by heating at 72°C for 10 minutes.

The thus prepared LM6-DNA fragment is inserted into plasmid pCR3.1DNA using Eukaryotic TA cloning Kit (Invitrogen) following the manufacturer's protocol and introduced into the competent *E .Coli* TOP10F' contained in the kit. The nucleotide sequences of these DNAs encoding the light chain of humanized TRA-8 are confirmed by the dideoxy method using a DNA analyzer.

The resulting plasmids are designated pCR3.1/LM6-1-16 (the plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain variable region of mouse TRA-8 and a human Ig light chain constant region).

The obtained plasmid pCR3.1/LM6-1-16 containing LM6-DNA fragment is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pHSG399 DNA is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pHSG399 DNA and LM6-DNA fragment, that had been digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar medium containing 0.1 mM IPTG, 0.1% X-Gal and 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol (final concentrations). The white transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 50 μg/ml chloramphenicol, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The extracted plasmid DNA is digested with Hind III and EcoR I, and then a clone carrying LM6-DNA fragment is selected by 1% agarose gel electrophoresis.

As a result of the above procedure, plasmid pHSG/M6-1-4-1 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the mouse TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is obtained. The transformant *E coli* strain harboring these plasmid, designated as *E. coli* DH5α/pHSG/M6-1-4-1 was deposited with International Patent Organism Depositary, National Institute of Advanced Industrial Science and Technology, 1-1, Higashi 1 chome Tsukuba-shi, Ibaraki-ken, 305-5466, Japan on April 20, 2001, in accordance with the Budapest Treaty for the Deposit of Microorganisms, and was accorded the accession number FERM BP-7566.

3) Construction of plasmid pSR/LM6-1-4-6(expression plasmid for chimera type LM6 TRA-8 light chain)

The obtained plasmid pHSG/LM6-1-4-1 carrying a fusion fragment of the variable region of the mouse TRA-8 light chain and the constant region of human Igκ chain is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I.

One μg of cloning plasmid pSRPDHH DNA is digested with the restriction enzymes Hind III and EcoR I, and then dephosphorylated with CIP. The resulting dephosphorylated pSRPDHH DNA and HindIII-EcoRI DNA fragment obtained from pHSG/LM6-1-4-1 are ligated using DNA Ligation Kit Version 2.0 (Takara Syuzo, Co. Ltd.). Then, *E. coli* DH5α is transformed with the ligated DNA and spread onto LB agar. The transformants obtained are cultured in liquid LB medium containing 100 μg/ml ampicillin, and plasmid DNA is extracted from the resulting culture according to the alkaline-SDS method. The insertion and orientation of the desired DNA fragment in the vector is confirmed by DNA sequencing using a gene sequence analyzer.

The resulting expression plasmid carrying cDNA encoding the light chain of TRA-8 (chimera type) is designated pSR/LM6-1-4-6.

(5) Production of several types-Humanized or chimeric TRA-8 Antibody

Transfection of COS-7 cells is conducted by FUGENE6 transfection reagent methods (Boehringer Mannheim Biochemica) according to the instruction manual provided with the kit.

COS-7 cells (American Type Culture Collection No. CRL-1651) are grown to semi-confluent (3 x 10^6 cells/dish) in a culture dish (culture area: 57 cm^2; Sumitomo Bakelite) containing Dulbecco's Modified Eagle medium (hereinafter referred to as "D-MED"; Gibco BRL) supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum (hereinafter abbreviated as "FCS"; Moregate).

In the meantime, 10 μg/dish (total 5 dishes) of the humanized DR5 heavy chain expression plasmid DNA (pHA15-1) and 10 μg/dish of the humanized DR5 light chain expression plasmid DNA prepared by the alkaline-SDS method and

cesium chloride density gradient centrifugation are mixed, and then precipitated with ethanol, followed by suspending in 5 µl/dish of dH_2O.

After 15 µl/dish of FUGENE6 Transfection regent is mixed with 180 µl/dish D-MEM without FCS, this FUGENE solution (185 µl/dish) is mixed with 5 µl/dish DNA solution containing 10 µg/dish of the humanized DR5 heavy chain expression plasmid DNA and 10 µg/dish of the humanized DR5 light chain expression plasmid DNA. After 15 minutes incubation at room temperature, the obtained plasmid suspension (200 µl) is added to the previously prepared COS-7 plates. After incubating in 5% CO_2 at 37°C for 24 hours, the culture medium is changed with D-MEM without FCS. After incubating in 5% CO_2 at 37°C for 72 hours, the culture supernatant is recovered to purify the expression products in the supernatant fluids. By the method as described above, COS-7 cells are transfected with each of the following plasmid combinations:

(A): cotransfection of pHA15-1 and pSR/LM1-2 (H1L1)

(B): cotransfection of pHB14-1 and pSR/M2-1 (H2L2)

(C): cotransfection of pHB14-1 and pSR/LM3-3-44-10 (H2L3)

(D): cotransfection of pHB14-1 and pSR/LM4-5-3-3 (H2L4)

(E): cotransfection of pHC10-3 and pSR/M2-1 (H3L2)

(F): cotransfection of pHC10-3 and pSR/LM3-3-44-10 (H3L3)

(G): cotransfection of pHC10-3 and pSR/LM4-5-3-3 (H3L4)

(H): cotransfection of pHD21-1 and pSR/LM5-3-27-1 (H4L5)

(I): cotransfection of pM11-1 and pSR/LM6-1-4-6 (Chimera)

The culture is then centrifuged (3,500 r.p.m., 15 minutes) and collected the supernatant. The supernatant is filtrated with 0.45 µm filter (ADVANTEC TOYO DISMIC-25cs, Cat # 25CS045 AS). The purification of IgG from the filtrates are achieved using Protein G-POROS affinity chromatography (Applied Biosystems) under the following conditions:

HPLC system: BioCAD 700E (Applied Biosystems)

column: ProteinG-ID sensor cartridge

(column size: 2.1 mmID x 30 mm LD, bed volume: 0.1 ml; Applied Biosystems)
elution buffer: 0.1 M Glycine-HCl (pH 2.5)
neutralization buffer: 1 M Tris-HCl (pH 8.5)
detection: 280 nm
flow rate: 1 ml/min
fraction size: 0.5 ml/0.5 min
fraction tube: 1.5 ml polypropylene microtube
temperature: 4°C

After all the filtrates are applied to column, 50 ml of PBS (Sigma, Cat # 1000-3) is used to wash column. When the elution buffer is applied, fraction collector started. Each fraction microtube previously contained 55 µl of 1 M NaCl, 110 µl of neutralization buffer and 74 µl of 2 mg/ml bovine serum albumin (Sigma, Cat # A-7030) in PBS. The fractions from No. 7 through No. 8 are collected.

Verification of the expression of the humanized antibodies and quantitative assay of the expression products in the culture supernatant fluids prepared is performed by ELISA with an antibody against anti-human IgG.

To each well of a 96-well plate (MaxiSorp, Nunc), 100 µl of goat anti-human IgG Fc specific polyclonal antibody (Kappel) dissolved at the final concentration of 0.5 µg/ml in adsorption buffer (0.05 M sodium hydrogencarbonate, 0.02% sodium azide, pH 9.6) is added and the plate is incubated at 37°C for 2 hours to cause adsorption of the antibody. Then, the plate is washed with 350 µl of PBS-T five times. To the wells after washing, the culture supernatant diluted with D-MEM containing 10% FCS is added and incubated at 37°C for 2 hours. After washing again with PBS-T, 100 µl of alkaline phosphatase-labeled goat anti-human IgG Fc specific polyclonal antibody (Jackson Immuno Research Lab.) diluted 10,000-fold with PBS-T is added to each well and incubated at 37°C for 2 hours. After washing again with PBS-T, a substrate solution of p-nitrophenyl phosphate obtained from Alkaline Phosphatase Substrate kit (Bio Rad) is added according to the instruction manual provided with the kit. After incubating at 37°C for 0.5 to 1 hour, the

absorbance at 405 nm is measured. In the present experiments, human plasma immunoglobulin G subclass 1 (IgG1) (Biopure AG) diluted with D-MEM containing 10% FCS to certain concentrations is used as concentration reference samples of the humanized DR5 antibodies contained in the culture supernatant fluids.

As a result, the expression and purified products in the culture supernatant are detected specifically with the anti-human IgG antibody. The final concentration of human IgG antibody is 44.03 μg/ml (H1L1), 39.8 μg/ml (H2L2), 26.7 μg/ml (H2L3), 41.0 μg/ml (H2L4), 39.3 μg/ml (H3L2), 24.7 μg/ml (H3L3), 21.5 μg/ml (H3L4), 16.7 μg/ml (H4L5) and 18.3 μg/ml (chimera), respectively.

(6) Apoptosis-inducing activity of several types Humanized Antibody or Chimeric Antibody

Jurkat cells (ATCC No. TIB-152), are used to examine the apoptosis-inducing activity of the purified humanized TRA-8 antibody.

Jurkat cells cultured in RPMI1640 medium with 10% FCS (Gibco BRL) at 37°C for 3 days in the presence of 5% CO_2 are dispensed into each well of a 96-well microplate (Sumitomo Bakelite) at 50 μl per well. The humanized TRA-8 prepared in this Example 26 are adjusted to have the concentration of the final product of interest of 100 ng/ml with RPMI1640 medium containing 10% FCS by estimating their concentrations in the fluids according to the method described in Example 26. Each of the solutions of the expression products thus adjusted to 100 ng/ml is used to produce serial dilutions by repeating serial 2-fold dilution with RPMI1640 containing 10% FCS. Each of the diluted humanized TRA-8 solution (H1L1, H2L2, H2L3, H2L4, H3L3, H3L4 or H4L5) is added to each well at 50 μl per well. After reacting at 37°C for 12 hours, 50 μl of 25 μM PMS containing 1 mg/ml XTT is added (final concentrations of 250 μg/ml for XTT and 5 μM for PMS). After incubating for 3 hours, the absorbance at 450 nm of each well is measured to calculate the cell viability by using the reduction ability of mitochondria as the index.

The viability of the cells in each well is calculated according to the following formula:

$$\text{Viability (\%)} = 100 \times (a-b) / (c-b)$$

wherein "a" is the measurement of a test well, "b" is the measurement of a well with no cells, and "c" is the measurement of a well with no antibody added.

As a result, the tested humanized antibodies are demonstrated to induce apoptosis in cells of T lymphoma cell line expressing human DR5 antigen.

Furthermore, the apoptosis-inducing activity of humanized TRA-8 to PC-3 is examined by adding taxol according to the method described in Example 25.

Human prostate cancer cell line PC-3 (ATCC No. CRL-1435) is obtained from American Tissue Culture Collection (ATCC) and maintained in F-12K Nutrient Mixture (21127-022, Gibco BRL) containing 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS, Hyclone), 1% L-Glutamine-200 mM (25030-149, Gibco BRL) and 0.5% Penicillin Streptomycin Solution (P-7539, Sigma). RPMI1640 medium (MED-008, IWAKI) supplemented with 10% FBS and 0.5% Penicillin Streptomycin Solution is used in the following experiment. Exponentially growing PC-3 cells are collected by trypsinization and washed twice with fresh medium. The cells are then counted, resuspended in fresh medium at a density of 5×10^4 cells/ml and distributed in triplicate into flat-bottomed 96 well plates (3598, Corning-Coster) in a total volume of 100 µl/well one day before the start of the experiment. A representative anti-cancer drug, Paclitaxel (169-18611, Wako) dissolved in dimethylsulfoxide (10 mg/ml) is diluted in fresh medium and then added to the 96-well plates containing the cells at 50 µl/well. The final concentrations of dimethylsulfoxide are less than 0.1%. After incubation for 24 hr at 37°C in 5% CO_2 atmosphere, humanized TRA-8 antibody (H1L1, H2L2, H2L3, H2L4, H3L2, H3L3, H3L4 or H4L5) diluted in fresh medium is added to the wells. After incubation for a further 24 hr, 50 µl of Minimum Essential Medium (11095-098, Gibco BRL) containing 1 mg/ml of XTT and 25 mM of PMS is added to the wells and the plates are incubated for 6 hr.

OD450 is then measured by ARVO HTS 1420 Multilabel Counter (Wallac Berthold) and the cell viability is calculated as follows.

Cell viability (%) = (OD450 for the well containing cells treated with Taxol and humanized TRA-8 (agent(s)) - OD450 for the well containing neither cells nor agent) x 100 / (OD450 for the well containing cells with no agent –OD450 for the well containing neither cells nor agent)

As a result, the tested humanized antibodies are demonstrated to induce apoptosis in human prostate cancer cells expressing human DR5 antigen.

Example 27. Production of DR4 Antibody

A fusion protein containing the extracellular domain of human DR4 (a.a. 1-236) and the Fc portion of human IgG1 was expressed in Cos-7 cells transfected with a recombinant adenoviral vector. The fusion protein was purified by protein A affinity column. Balb/c mice were immunized with the purified fusion protein as described above. One hybridoma clone, 2E12 (IgG1, κ), with specific binding to DR4 and the capability of inducing apoptosis of Ramos human B lymphoma cells was subcloned three times. The binding specificity of 2E12 was determined by ELISA and Western blot analysis using human DR5, DcR1 and DcR2 and IgG1 fusion protein as control antigens. The binding of 2E12 to cell surface DR4 was determined by flow cytometry analysis of Cos-7 cells transfected with the full-length cDNA encoding human DR4. Apoptosis-inducing activity was determined by incubating Ramos cells with 1μg/ml 2E12 in the presence of goat anti-mouse IgG1. Cell viability was determined by ATPLite assay as described above.

Example 28. Characterization of DR4 Antibody

DR4 monoclonal antibody (2E12) is specific for human DR4 as it did not bind to other TRAIL receptors such as DR5, DcR1 and DcR2 in ELISA (Figure 19a). 2E12 recognized cell surface DR4 as demonstrated by flow cytometry analysis of DR4 transfected Cos-7 cells (Figure 19b). 2E12 was able to induce apoptosis of Ramos lymphoma cells in the presence of second antibody crosslinking in a dose-dependent fashion (Figure 19c). In vitro treatment of Ramos cells with 2E12

resulted in a time-dependent activation of caspase 8, 9 and 3, and cleavage of PARP (Figure 19d). These results indicate that 2E12 is an agonistic anti-DR4 antibody, which induces apoptosis in a caspase-dependent fashion.

Using anti-DR4 (2E12), followed by PE-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG1 antibody and flow cytometry, DR4 antibody was shown to bind to cells of a fibrosarcoma cell line (Hs 913T) and several breast cancer cell lines (2LMP. MDA-MB231, and MDA-MB 453), but showed little to no binding to a normal human skin fibroblast cell line (Malme-3).

Example 29. Tumoricidal activity of DR4 antibodies

The tumoricidal activity of 2E12 was tested using breast cancer tumor models. Nude mice were inoculated *s.c.* with the human breast cancer cell line, 2LMP. Treatment with *i.p.* doses of 200 μg of 2E12 occurred on days 7, 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24 after tumor cell injection. Animals received *i.v.* adriamycin (doxorubicin) (6mg/kg) on days 8, 12, and 16. Treatment with 2E12 and adriamycin (Figure 20) produced greater tumor growth inhibition than either 2E12 or adriamycin alone.

The tumoricidal activity of TRA-8 in combination with 2E12 was tested using the same breast cancer tumor models. Treatment with *i.p.* doses of 200 μg of TRA-8 and 2E12 occurred on days 7, 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24 after tumor cell injection. Animals received *i.v.* adriamycin (6mg/kg) on days 8, 12, and 16. Treatment with TRA-8 plus 2E12, or TRA-8 plus 2E12 and adriamycin produced 88% and100% complete tumor regression, respectively. (Figure 21.)

Example 30. Tumoricidal activity of DR4/DR5 antibodies in combination with other therapies

(1) Cell lines and Reagents

The 2LMP subclone of the human breast cancer cell line MDA-MB-231, the LCC6 subclone of MDA-MB-435, and the DY36T2 subclone of MDA-MB-361 were obtained from Dr. Marc Lipmann (Georgetown University, Washington, D.C.) and maintained in improved MEM supplemented with 10% FBS (Hyclone, Logan,

UT). The MDA-MB-231, MDA-MB-453, MDA-MB-468, BT-474, SK-BR-3, and ZR-75-1 human breast cancer cell lines were obtained from the American Type Culture Collection (Manassas, VA). MDA-MB-231, MDA-MB-453, and MDA-MB-468 cells were grown in DMEM supplemented with MEM vitamins, MEM nonessential amino acids, 1 mM sodium pyruvate and 10% FBS. BT-474 cells were grown in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10 μg/ml insulin, 4.5 g/l glucose, 10 mM HEPES, 1 mM sodium pyruvate and 10% FBS. SK-BR-3 cells were grown in McCoy's medium with 15% FBS. ZR-75-1 cells were grown in Ham's F12K medium with 20% FBS. All cell lines were maintained in antibiotic-free medium at 37°C in a 5% CO2 atmosphere and routinely screened for mycoplasma contamination

Purified TRA-8 (IgG1) mAb was produced at UAB and also provided by Sankyo Co., Ltd. (Tokyo, Japan). Phycoerythrin-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG1 and isotype-specific IgG1 control antibody were obtained from Southern Biotechnology Associates (Birmingham, AL). Adriamycin and paclitaxel were purchased from Sigma Chemical Co. (St. Louis, MO) and were prepared as 10 mM stock solutions in distilled H2O or DMSO, respectively. For animal studies, the clinical formulation of paclitaxel (Bristol-Myers Squibb Co., Princeton, NJ) was obtained from the University of Alabama at Birmingham Hospital Pharmacy (Birmingham, AL). This preparation was diluted 1:5 in PBS immediately before use.

(2) Indirect Immunofluorescence and Flow Cytometry Analysis of DR5 Expression

Cells in exponential growth phase were washed once with Dulbecco's PBS (Ca2+ and Mg2+ deficient) and harvested with 4 mM EDTA/0.5% KCl at 37°C. Cells were collected by centrifugation at 4°C for 5 min at 1,000 rpm, washed once and resuspended in PBS containing 1% BSA and 0.01% sodium azide (FACS buffer) at 4°C. Cells were incubated with 10 μg/ml of purified TRA-8 or an isotype-specific IgG1 control antibody for 60 min at 4°C, washed once with buffer, then

incubated with 10 μg/ml of PE-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG1 for 20 min at 4°C. After antibody staining, cells were washed once with FACS buffer and fixed in 1% paraformaldehyde for 15 min on ice. Samples were analyzed on a Becton Dickinson FACScan (San Jose, CA) and data was analyzed using CellQuest software.

(3) Cell Viability Assays Using ATPLite

Cells were trypsinized and resuspended in complete culture medium. One thousand cells per well were plated in optically clear 96-well black plates (Costar #3904, Corning, NY) and incubated overnight at 37°C before initiating treatments. Drugs and antibody were diluted in culture medium immediately before use, and the final concentration of DMSO was always $\leq 0.001\%$. Cell viability was assessed after 24 h exposure to TRA-8 alone. For combination treatments with cytotoxic drugs, cells were pretreated with the drug for 24 h before adding antibody, and incubated for an additional 24 h before assessing cell viability by measurement of cellular ATP levels using the ATPLite luminescence based assay (Packard Instruments, Meriden, CT). The manufacturer's recommended protocol was followed with the exception that all reaction volumes (culture medium and reagents) were reduced by one-half. All samples were assayed in triplicate and are reported as the mean ± SE from a minimum of 3 independent experiments.

(4) TRA-8 Therapy Studies Alone or in Combination with Chemotherapy or Radiation in Athymic Nude Mice Bearing Breast Cancer Xenografts

Athymic nude mice were injected s.c. with 3 x 107 2LMP cells. At 7 days after tumor cell injection, 200 or 600 μg (10 or 30 mg/kg) TRA-8 was administered i.p. followed by five additional injections on days 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24. The growth of tumors was monitored over time. In subsequent studies, animals bearing 2LMP s.c. tumors were injected i.p. with 200 μg of TRA-8 on days 7, 10, 14, 17, 21, and 24 alone or in combination with adriamycin (6 mg/kg i.v., days 8, 12, and 16) or paclitaxel (20 mg/kg i.p., on days 8, 12, 16, 20, and 24). Tumor size and regression rates were determined. In addition, a study was carried out with TRA-8 and

adriamycin using the same regimen described above in combination with 3 Gy ^{60}Co irradiation of 2LMP xenografts on days 9 and 17.

(5) Analysis of Apoptosis in Xenografts

Athymic nude mice injected s.c. with 3 x 10^7 2LMP cells on day 0 received 100 μg TRA-8 i.p. on days 7 and 10. Groups of 2 mice each received adriamycin (3 mg/kg) on days 8 and 11, paclitaxel (10 mg/kg) on days 8 and 11, or the combination of TRA-8 and adriamycin or paclitaxel with the same dose and schedule. One group of mice was untreated. The xenografts were dissected for the study of apoptosis on day 14 after tumor cell injection. The reason for the substantial reduction in treatment intensity compared to our standard treatment protocol was to allow adequate tumor tissue for analysis on day 14. Tunel assay for apoptosis in tumor xenografts was performed as follows. Five-micron paraffin sections of tissue were mounted on Superfrost/Plus slides and heated at 58°C for 1 h. Tissue sections were deparaffinized in three changes of xylene and rehydrated with one change of absolute ethanol, 95% ethanol, and 70% ethanol, each in 5-min increments. Then, the sections were placed in Tris-buffered saline (0.5M Tris base, 0.15 M NaCl, 0.0002% Triton X-100, pH 7.6). Apoptotic nuclei were detected using an Apop Tag Peroxidase kit (Intergen, Purchase, NY). Proteinase K (20 μg/ml in distilled deionized H_2O) was added to the tissue specimens and incubated at room temperature for 15 min. Endogenous peroxidases were quenched with an aqueous solution of 3% hydrogen peroxide for 5 min. Sections were treated with an equilibration buffer for 30 min and then incubated with the TdT/enzyme (diluted in labeling reaction mix) for 1 h at 37°C using parafilm covers. During this incubation, the TdT enzyme binds the 3'-OH ends of DNA fragments and catalyzes the addition of digoxigenin-labeled and unlabeled deoxynucleotides. Negative controls were incubated with distilled H_2O (diluted in labeling reaction mix) instead of the TdT enzyme. A stop buffer was added for 10 min at room temperature to terminate the labeling reaction. An anti-digoxigenin conjugate was added to each slide for 30 min. The chromagen 3,3' DAB was used to visualize the labeled 3' OH end of DNA

fragments. The slides were then rinsed in deionized water and lightly counterstained with hematoxylin, dehydrated using graded alcohols and xylene and coverlsipped using Permount. Approximately 10 random fields were evaluated for percentage of Tunel stained and percentage of intensely stained apoptotic bodies throughout the tissue.

(6) Statistical Analysis

(A) Analysis of TRA-8 Interaction with Drug Cytotoxicity In Vitro

The cytotoxicity data were evaluated to assess whether the combination cytotoxic effects were additive, less than additive (antagonistic), or greater than additive (synergistic). The dose response relationships for the agents alone and in combination were modeled using a second-order response surface model with linear, quadratic and interaction terms for each of the 9 cell lines (Montgomery, D.C. Design and Analysis of Experiments, New York:Wiley, 2001), as recommended by Gennings (On Testing for Drug/Chemical Interactions: Definitions and Inference, pp.457-468, 2000). A significant interaction term was classed as either synergistic or antagonistic depending on whether the interaction term was negative with more than additive cytotoxicity, or positive with less than additive cytotoxicity. If the interaction term was not significant, then the relationship between TRA-8 and adriamycin or TRA-8 and paclitaxel would be considered additive, provided the additive terms were significant.

(B) Analysis of TRA-8, Chemotherapy, Radiation and Combination Therapy of Individual Animal Experiments

Data from 6 independent experiments were analyzed by individual experiment. Treatment combinations were compared with respect to in vivo anti-tumor efficacy, i.e., inhibition of tumor growth, which was measured as three endpoints; extension of tumor doubling times, percentage of tumor regressions, and growth rates over time. The actual number of days at which the tumor doubled in surface area (product of two diameters) relative to baseline on day 7 after tumor cell

injection was used in the doubling time analysis. The nonparametric Kruskal-Wallis test was used for median tumor doubling time comparisons between treatments. Fisher's exact test was used to compare the proportions of tumor regressions and relapse-free regressions across treatment groups. To determine if any combination therapy produced significant synergistic inhibition of tumor growth, i.e., more than additive, the growth curves from the serial area measurements were compared using a linear mixed model approach over the first 3 weeks after start of therapy (Lindsey, J.K. Models for Repeated Measurements, pp. 100-142, Oxford, 1993). To test for synergistic effects of the combination therapies, an interaction term was included in the model. If the interaction term was significant and the effect was inhibition of growth at a rate greater than additive then the interaction was considered synergistic.

(C) Aggregate Analysis of Therapy Effects

A total of 166 animals, 10 treatment groups, and 6 independent experiments were included in the aggregate analysis. Treatment combinations were compared with respect to in vivo anti-tumor efficacy. The median tumor doubling times were analyzed using the Kruskal-Wallis test and Fisher's exact test was used to compare the proportions of tumor regressions and relapse-free regressions across treatment groups.

All statistical analyses were conducted using SAS® (Sas/Stat User's Guide, SAS OnlineDoc, Version 8, Cary NC: SAS Institute Inc., 1999).

(6) DR5 Expression and TRA-8 Induced Cytotoxicity in Breast Cancer Cell Lines

As illustrated in Figure 22A, all nine breast cancer cell lines were DR5 positive with varying degrees of expression from strongly positive (LCC6 and MDA-MB-453) to weakly positive (MDA-MB-468 and SK-BR-3). Figure 22B illustrates the TRA-8 induced cytotoxicity of the nine cell lines. Four cell lines were sensitive to TRA-8 induced cytotoxicity with IC_{50} concentrations of 17 to 299 ng/ml (LCC6, 2LMP, MDA-MB-231, MDA-MB-468), while others were quite resistant (DY36T2, BT-474, MDA-MB-453). There was not a good correlation of DR5

expression and degree of TRA-8 induced cytotoxicity as illustrated by cell lines MDA-MB-453 and MDA-MB-468.

TRA-8 effects on chemotherapy-induced cytotoxicity were then examined with adriamycin (Figure 23A) and paclitaxel (Figure 23B). An analysis to test for interaction between antibody and drug effects is summarized in Table 5. There were no significant synergistic interactions between TRA-8 and paclitaxel, with most of the interactions being additive. Four of nine cell lines fulfilled criteria for a synergistic interaction between TRA-8 and adriamycin. The cell line 2LMP demonstrated good sensitivity to TRA-8, as well as sensitivity to either adriamycin or paclitaxel. This cell line was chosen to explore in vivo efficacy of antibody and/or drugs.

Table 5. ***In Vitro*** **Interaction Effects for Combination Treatments**

	TRA-8 + Adriamycin		TRA-8 + Paclitaxel	
Cell Line	**Interaction**	**p-value[a]**	**Interaction**	**p-value[a]**
LCC6	Synergistic	<0.001	Additive	0.624
MDA-MB-453	Synergistic	<0.001	No response[c]	0.615
2LMP	Additive	0.153	Additive	0.937
MDA-MB-231	Additive	0.663	Additive	0.064
BT-474	Synergistic	<0.001	ND[b]	0.992
ZR-75-1	Synergistic	0.013	Additive	0.172
DY36T2	ND[b]	0.808	ND[b]	0.798
MDA-MB-468	Additive	0.184	Additive	0.724
SK-BR-3	Additive	0.361	No response[c]	0.871

[a] p-value refers to the significance of the synergistic interaction term. If both TRA-8 and drug effects were significant and the interaction term was significant, then the combination effects were considered synergistic. If the interaction p-value is not < 0.05 then the combination effects were considered additive.

[b] Not determined because the TRA-8 effect was not significant, but the adriamycin/paclitaxel effect was significant.

[c] There was no significant dose response for either agent.

(7) In Vivo Anti-Tumor Effects of TRA-8 Alone or in Combination with Chemotherapy and/or Radiation

TRA-8 at doses of 200 μg and 600 μg twice a week for 6 doses produced a similar inhibition of tumor growth for well-established 2LMP s.c. tumors (Figure 24). In three additional independent experiments, the 200 μg dose/schedule produced statistically significant inhibition of tumor growth ($p<0.004$, Kruskal-Wallis test on tumor doubling times) compared to untreated controls and this dose and schedule was selected for further studies. Figure 25 illustrates the effects of TRA-8, adriamycin, or a combination of TRA-8 and adriamycin on anti-tumor efficacy. As compared to untreated controls, therapy with TRA-8 alone or TRA-8 plus adriamycin produced significant inhibition of tumor growth ($p=0.002$ Kruskal-Wallis test), while adriamycin did not differ from controls. The combination of TRA-8 plus adriamycin produced greater growth inhibition than either agent alone ($p=0.002$), as well as significantly more complete regressions of tumor (four) than either agent alone where no complete regressions were seen ($p<0.001$, Fisher exact test). In vivo TRA-8 and adriamycin synergism was evaluated using an early growth curve analysis. The interaction term was significant ($p<0.001$) and synergistic. The synergistic interaction was corroborated in a second independent experiment.

The effects of TRA-8 and paclitaxel were studied in this same model with similar observations (Figure 26). As compared to untreated controls, TRA-8 and the TRA-8 plus paclitaxel produced significant inhibition of tumor growth ($p<0.001$, Kruskal-Wallis test). Tumor growth in animals treated with TRA-8 plus paclitaxel was significantly different than paclitaxel alone ($p=0.008$) and produced 3/8 complete regressions as compared to none for either agent alone. Analysis of the early tumor growth curves demonstrated that synergistic effect was nearly significant ($p=0.063$) while additive effects were significant ($p<0.001$).

Finally, the effects of TRA-8, adriamycin, and ^{60}Co radiation were analyzed as single agents and in various combinations as illustrated in Figure 27. There were significant differences overall with respect to tumor doubling times ($p<0.001$) and multiple comparisons indicated that the triple therapy with TRA-8, adriamycin, and ^{60}Co produced tumor growth inhibition that was significantly different than all other treated groups, while both dual therapy groups (adriamycin plus TRA-8 or ^{60}Co plus TRA-8) were different than either single agent group ($p < 0.001$). The ^{60}Co animals treated with radiation alone did not differ from untreated controls ($p=0.926$). All two-way treatment combinations had significant synergistic effects ($p<0.001$). Complete regressions were seen in 6/8 animals receiving triple therapy and 4 animals did not have tumor recurrence over 180 days of follow-up.

(8) Aggregate Analysis of Therapy Effects

The in vivo anti-tumor studies were comprised of 166 animals, and the tumor doubling times and frequency of complete tumor regression for all animals in each treatment group were analyzed (Table 6). ANOVA analysis for mean tumor doubling times indicated significant differences among treatment groups ($p<0.001$), with multiple comparisons yielding that TRA-8 + paclitaxel, TRA-8 + adriamycin, and TRA-8 + adriamycin + ^{60}Co had significantly longer mean tumor doubling times than any treatment group lacking TRA-8. The addition of TRA-8 to any treatment modality produced a longer tumor doubling time than that modality alone. Similarly, Kruskal-Wallis test on median time to tumor doubling yielded that the

medians were significantly different over-all ($p<0.001$). Pair-wise comparisons using Wilcoxin signed-rank test yielded similar patterns for median time to tumor doubling as the ANOVA multiple comparisons. This analysis underestimates the growth inhibition produced by the most effective treatments in that groups that did not reach a doubling of tumor by the end of the experiment were assigned the experiment termination day. Table 6 also provides the frequency of complete regression of tumor and the frequency of persistence of that regression to the end of the experiment. There were no complete regressions of tumor seen in animals treated with either chemotherapy regimen or radiation attesting to the well-established tumor growth and tumor aggressiveness. From Fisher's exact test, there were significant differences in the frequency of tumor complete regressions between treatment groups ($p<0.001$). Thirty of 166 animals achieved complete regression, and 28 of these received TRA-8 alone or in combination with other modalities. Complete regression occurred in 1/42 control animals: 1/54 animals receiving chemotherapy, radiation, or a combination; and 28/68 of TRA-8 alone or TRA-8 combination regimens. The TRA-8 treated groups had a significantly ($p<0.001$) greater frequency of complete regression. Similarly, 14/68 animals receiving TRA-8 or TRA-8 combinations did not have tumor re-growth compared to 1/42 controls and 0/52 animals treated with chemotherapy and/or radiation. The relapse-free regressions had observation periods of 99 to 171 days (146 ± 24 days).

Table 2. Aggregate Results of Doubling Time and Complete Regression of 2LMP Tumors

			Complete Regressions		
Treatment	**# of Animals**	**Tumor Doubling Time (days) (mean/median)**	**Total (%)**	**No relapse (%)**	**Mean Obser Period (d**
Untreated Controls	44 (42)[a]	12/8	1 (2%)	1 (2%)	177
^{60}Co	8 (7)	14/10	0	0	186
Adriamycin	31 (28)	17/18	0	0	197
Paclitaxel	7 (5)	25/20	0	0	-

Adriamycin + ^{60}Co	8 (8)	39/36	1 (13%)	0	197
TRA-8	30 (26)	47/23	6 (20%)	5 (17%)	159
TRA-8 + ^{60}Co	8 (8)	65/50	3 (38%)	1 (13%)	186
TRA-8 + Paclitaxel	8 (8)	71/62	3 (38%)	1 (13%)	148
TRA-8 + Adriamycin	14 (12)	81/64	10 (71%)	3 (21%)	185
TRA-8 + Adriamycin + ^{60}Co	8 (6)	>140/179	6 (75%)	4 (50%)	192

[a] The numbers in parentheses are the number of uncensored animals.

(9) Apoptosis in Treated Tumors

The induction of apoptosis in 2LMP xenografts following treatment with TRA-8, adriamycin, paclitaxel, TRA-8 + adriamycin, and TRA-8 + paclitaxel was assessed using the TUNEL technique. In untreated animals, tumors had 4% stained cells (1% intense), while treatment with adriamycin or paclitaxel had 8% (6% intense) and 7% (2% intense) stained cells. Animals treated with TRA-8 alone had striking apoptosis with 25% (15% intense) stained cells. TRA-8 plus adriamycin had 28% (22% intense) and TRA-8 plus paclitaxel had 26% (12% intense) stained cells.

Any patents or publications mentioned in the specification are indicative of the level of those skilled in the art to which the invention pertains. These patents and publications are herein incorporated by reference to the same extent as if each individual publication was specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference.

The present invention is not limited in scope by the above-referenced deposit or the embodiments disclosed in the examples which are intended as illustrations of a few aspects of the invention and any embodiments which are functionally equivalent are within the scope of this invention. Various modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art and are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

References

1. Wiley SR, Schooley K, Smolak PJ, Din WS, Huang CP, Nicholl JK, Sutherland GR, Smith TD, Rauch C, Smith CA, et al. Immunity 1995 Dec;3(6):673-82
2. Pan G, O'Rourke K, Chinnaiyan AM, Gentz R, Ebner R, Ni J, Dixit VM Science 1997 Apr 4;276(5309):111-3
3. Walczak H, Degli-Esposti MA, Johnson RS, Smolak PJ, Waugh JY, Boiani N, Timour MS, Gerhart MJ, Schooley KA, Smith CA, Goodwin RG, Rauch CT. EMBO J 1997 Sep 1;16(17):5386-97
4. MacFarlane M, Ahmad M, Srinivasula SM, Fernandes-Alnemri T, Cohen GM, Alnemri ES. J Biol Chem 1997 Oct 10;272(41):25417-20.
5. Degli-Esposti MA, Dougall WC, Smolak PJ, Waugh JY, Smith CA, Goodwin RG. Immunity 1997 Dec;7(6):813-20
6. Chaudhary PM, Eby M, Jasmin A, Bookwalter A, Murray J, Hood L. Immunity 1997 Dec;7(6):821-30
7. Schneider P, Thome M, Burns K, Bodmer JL, Hofmann K, Kataoka T, Holler N, Tschopp J. Immunity 1997 Dec;7(6):831-6
8. Degli-Esposti MA, Smolak PJ, Walczak H, Waugh J, Huang CP, DuBose RF, Goodwin RG, Smith CA. J Exp Med 1997 Oct 6;186(7):1165-70
9. Sheridan JP, Marsters SA, Pitti RM, Gurney A, Skubatch M, Baldwin D, Ramakrishnan L, Gray CL, Baker K, Wood WI, Goddard AD, Godowski P, Ashkenazi A. Science 1997 Aug 8;277(5327):818-21
10. Pan G, Ni J, Wei YF, Yu G, Gentz R, Dixit VM. Science 1997 Aug 8;277(5327):815-818
11. Marsters SA, Sheridan JP, Pitti RM, Huang A, Skubatch M, Baldwin D, Yuan J, Gurney A, Goddard AD, Godowski P, Ashkenazi A. Curr Biol 1997 Dec 1;7(12):1003-6

12. Emery JG, McDonnell P, Burke MB, Deen KC, Lyn S, Silverman C, Dul E, Appelbaum ER, Eichman C, DiPrinzio R, Dodds RA, James IE, Rosenberg M, Lee JC, Young PR. J Biol Chem 1998 Jun 5;273(23):14363-7

13. Walczak H, Miller RE, Ariail K, Gliniak B, Griffith TS, Kubin M, Chin W, Jones J, Woodward A, Le T, Smith C, Smolak P, Goodwin RG, Rauch CT, Schuh JC, Lynch DH. Nat Med 1999 Feb;5(2):157-63

14. Gazitt Y . Leukemia 1999 Nov;13(11):1817-24

15. Rieger J, Naumann U, Glaser T, Ashkenazi A, Weller M. FEBS Lett 1998 May 1;427(1):124-8

16. Jeremias I, Herr I, Boehler T, Debatin KM. Eur J Immunol 1998 Jan;28(1):143-52

17. Martinez-Lorenzo MJ, Alava MA, Gamen S, Kim KJ, Chuntharapai A, Pineiro A, Naval J, Anel A. Eur J Immunol 1998 Sep;28(9):2714-25

18. Phillips TA, Ni J, Pan G, Ruben SM, Wei YF, Pace JL, Hunt JS. J Immunol 1999 May 15;162(10):6053-9

19. Kayagaki N, Yamaguchi N, Nakayama M, Takeda K, Akiba H, Tsutsui H, Okamura H, Nakanishi K, Okumura K, Yagita H. J Immunol 1999 Aug 15;163(4):1906-13

20. Johnsen AC, Haux J, Steinkjer B, Nonstad U, Egeberg K, Sundan A, Ashkenazi A, Espevik T. Cytokine 1999 Sep;11(9):664-72

21. Zamai L, Ahmad M, Bennett IM, Azzoni L, Alnemri ES, Perussia B. J Exp Med 1998 Dec 21;188(12):2375-80

22. Fanger NA, Maliszewski CR, Schooley K, Griffith TS. J Exp Med 1999 Oct 18;190(8):1155-64

23. Griffith TS, Wiley SR, Kubin MZ, Sedger LM, Maliszewski CR, Fanger NA. J Exp Med 1999 Apr 19;189(8):1343-54

24. Griffith TS, Rauch CT, Smolak PJ, Waugh JY, Boiani N, Lynch DH, Smith CA, Goodwin RG, Kubin MZ. J. Immunology 1999 162: 2597-2605

25. Albani S and Carson DA, 1997 Arthritis and allied conditions, a textbook of rheumatology, 13th edition, volume 2, 979-992.

26. Fujisawa K, Asahara H, Okamoto K, Aono H, Hasunuma T, Kobata T, Iwakura Y, Yonehara S, Sumida T, and Nishioka K. J. Clin. Invest. 1996 98(2): 271-278

27. Zhang H, Yang Y, Horton JL, Samoilova EB, Judge TA, Turka LA, Wilson JM, and Chen Y. 1997 J. Clin. Invest. 100(8), 1951-1957.

28. Roth W, Isenmann S, Naumann U, Kugler S, Bahr M, Dichgans J, Ashkenazi A, Weller M. Locoregional. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1999 Nov 19;265(2):479-83

29. Chinnaiyan AM, Prasad U, Shankar S, Hamstra DA, Shanaiah M, Chenevert TL, Ross BD, Rehemtulla A. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 2000 Feb 15; 97(4):1754-1759

30. Arai T, Akiyama Y, Okabe S, Saito K, Iwai T, Yuasa Y. Cancer Lett 1998 Nov 27;133(2):197-204

31. Lee SH, Shin MS, Kim HS, Lee HK, Park WS, Kim SY, Lee JH, Han SY, Park JY, Oh RR, Jang JJ, Han JY, Lee JY, Yoo NJ. Cancer Res 1999 Nov 15;59(22):5683-5686

32. Pai SI, Wu GS, Ozoren N, Wu L, Jen J, Sidransky D, El-Deiry WS. 1998 Cancer Res Aug 15;58(16):3513-3518

33. Maniatis et al., 1982, Molecular Cloning, a Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, NY

34. Schroff et al., 1985 Cancer Res., 45, 879-885.

35. Yelton, D. E., et al., 1978 Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology, 81, 1-7

36. Kohler, G., et al., 1976 European J. Immunology, 6, 511-519

37. Shulman, M., et al., 1978 Nature, 276. 269-270

38. Kearney, J. F., et al., 1979 J. Immunology, 123, 1548-1550

39. Horibata, K. and Harris, A. W., 1975 Nature, 256, 495-497

40. Sheridan JP, Marsters SA, Pitti RM, Gurney A, Skubatch M, Baldwin D, Ramakrishinan, Gray CL, Baker K, Wood WI, Goddard AD, Godowski P, and Ashkenazi A, 1997 Science, 277, 818-821.

41. Cheng J et al., 1994 Science, 263, 1759-1762

42. Bendele AM et al., 1999 Clin Exp Rheumatol, 17(5), 553-560

43. Sheridan JP, Marsters AS, Pitti RM, Gurney A, Skubatch M, Baldwin D, Ramakrishnan L, Gray CJ, Baker K, Wood WI, Goddard AD, Godowski P, and Ashkenazi A. 1997 Science, 277, 818-821.

44. Schneider P, Thome M, Burns K, Bodmer JL, Hofmann K, Kataoka T, Holler N, Tschopp J., 1997 Immunity Dec;7(6): 831-836.

45. Kennedy NJ, Kataoka T, Tschopp J, and Budd RC. 1999 J. Exp. Med. 1891-1896.

46. Miiler-Ladner U, Gay RE, and Gay S, 1997 Arthritis and allied conditions, a textbook of rheumatology, 13th edition, Volume 1, 243-254.

What is claimed is:

1. Use of a monocolonal antibody that specifically binds a TRAIL receptor DR5 in the manufacture of a medicament for selectively inducing apoptosis in target cells expressing DR5, wherein the medicament is for administration prior to administration of a therapeutic agent.
2. The use according to claim 1 wherein the medicament acts by contacting said target cells with the antibody.
3. The use according to claim 2 wherein the therapeutic agent acts by contacting said target cells with a therapeutic agent for killing said target cells.
4. The use according to claim 1 wherein the antibody binds a TRAIL receptor DR5 in the absence of crosslinking, has *in vitro* cell death-inducing activity in its soluble form at concentrations less than 1 µg/mL in target cells expressing DR5 and, *in vivo*, tumorcidal activity in tumour cells expressing DR5 and wherein the antibody does not bind TRAIL receptor DR4, RcR1 or DcR2.
5. The use of claim 1, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are chemotherapeutic agents.
6. The use of claim 5, wherein the chemotherapeutic agent or agents are selected from the group consisting of bleomycin, carboplatin, chlorambucil, cisplatin, colchicine, cyclophosphamide, daunorubicin, actinomycin, diethylstilbestrol, doxorubicin, etoposide, 5-fluorouracil, floxuridine, melphalan, methotrexate, mitomycin, 6-mercaptopurine, teniposide, 6-thioguanine, vincristine and vinblastine.
7. The use of claim 5, wherein the chemotherapeutic agent or agents are selected from the group consisting of leflunomide, dactinomycin, tamoxifen, interferon α-2b, glutamic acid, plicamycin, mercaptopurine, 6-thioguaninine, carmustine, BCNU, lomustine, CCNU, cytosine araboside, estramustine, hydroxyurea, procarbazine, busulfan, medroxyprogesterone, estramustine phosphate sodium, ethinyl estradiol, estradiol, megestrol acetate, methyltestosterone, diethylstilbestrol diphosphate, chlorotrianisene, testolactone, mephalen, chorambucil, mechlorethamine, thiotepa, bethamethasone sodium phosphate, dicarbazine, asparaginase, mitotane,

vincristine sulfate, and vinblastine sulfate.

8. The use of claim 7, wherein the chemotherapeutic agents are cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and predisone or a subset thereof.
9. The use of claim 1, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are disease modifying anti-rheumatic drugs.
10. Use of a monoclonal antibody that specifically binds a TRAIL receptor DR5 in the manufacture of a medicament for inhibiting proliferation of target cells expressing DR5, wherein the medicament is for administration prior to administration of a therapeutic agent.
11. The use according to claim 10 wherein the medicament acts by contacting said target cells with the antibody.
12. The use according to claim 11 wherein the therapeutic agent acts by contacting said cells with a therapeutic agent for killing said target cells.
13. The use according to claim 10 wherein the antibody binds a TRAIL receptor D5 in the absence of crosslinking, has *in vitro* cell death-inducing activity in its soluble form at concentrations less than 1 μg/mL in target cells expressing DR5 and, *in vivo*, tumorcidal activity in tumour cells expressing DR5 and wherein the antibody does not bind TRAIL receptor DR4, RcR1 or DcR2.
14. The use of claim 1 or 10, wherein at least one contacting step is performed *in vivo*.
15. The use of claim 1 or 10, wherein a least one contacting step is performed *in vitro*.
16. The use of claim 1 or 10 wherein the target cell is an abnormally proliferating synovial cell.
17. The use of claim 1 or 10, wherein the synovial cell is a rheumatoid arthritis synovial cell.
18. The use of claim 1 or 10, wherein the target cell is an activated immune cell.
19. The use of claim 1 or 10, wherein the target cell is an activated lymphocyte.
20. The use of claim 1 or 10, wherein the target cell is a neutrophil.
21. The use of claim 1 or 10, wherein the target cell is a virally infected cell.
22. The use of claim 1 or 10, wherein the medicament is suitable for use with

irradiation of the target cells.

23. Use of an antibody that specifically binds a TRAIL receptor DR5 in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of an inflammatory or autoimmune disease, wherein the medicament is suitable for administration in combination with a therapeutic quantity of a therapeutic agent.
24. Use according to claim 23 wherein said antibody, in its soluble form, has *in vivo* and *in vitro* apoptosis-inducing activity in target cells expressing DR5.
25. The use of claim 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are chemotherapeutic agents.
26. The use of claim 10 or 23, wherein the chemotherapeutic agent or agents are selected from the group consisting of bleomycin, carboplatin, chlorambucil, cisplatin, colchicine, cyclophosphamide, daunorubicin, actinomycin, diethylstilbestrol, doxorubicin, etoposide, 5-fluorouracil, floxuridine, melphalan, methotrexate, mitomycin, 6-mercaptopurine, teniposide, 6--thioguanine, vincristine and vinblastine.
27. The use of claim 10 or 23, wherein the chemotherapeutic agent or agents are selected from the group consisting of dactinomycin, tamoxifen, interferon α--2b, glutamic acid, plicamycin, mercaptopurine, 6-thioguaninine, carmustine, BCNU, lomustine, CCNU, cytosine araboside, estramustine, hydroxyurea, procarbazine, busulfan, medroxyprogesterone, estramustine phosphate sodium, ethinyl estradiol, estradiol, megestrol acetate, methyltestosterone, diethylstilbestrol diphosphate, chlorotrianisene, testolactone, mephalen, chorambucil, mechlorethamine, thiotepa, bethamethasone sodium phosphate, dicarbazine, asparaginase, mitotane, vincristine sulfate, and vinblastine sulfate.
28. The use of claim 10 or 23, wherein the chemotherapeutic agents are cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and predisone or a subset thereof.
29. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, further comprising administering rituximab.
30. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are members of the TNF family.
31. The use of claim 30, wherein the member or members of the TNF family are

CD40 ligands, or fragments or derivatives thereof.

32. The use of claim 30, wherein the member or members of the TNF family are Fas ligands, or a fragments or derivatives thereof.
33. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are anti-inflammatory agents.
34. The use of claim 33, wherein the anti-inflammatory agent or agents are non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents.
35. The use of claim 34, wherein non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents are COX-1 inhibitors or COX-2 inhibitors.
36. The use of claim 33, wherein the anti-inflammatory agent or agents are steroidal anti-inflammatory agents.
37. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are antiviral agents.
38. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are anti-retroviral agents.
39. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are anti-opportunistic agents.
40. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are antibiotics.
41. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are immunosuppressive agents.
42. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are immunoglobulin preparations.
43. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are antimalarial agents.
44. The use of claim 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are anti-rheumatoid arthritis agents.
45. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23 wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are cytokines
46. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are chemokines.

47. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are growth factors.
48. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent is a second antibody that promotes apoptosis or blocks proliferation of the target cells.
49. The use of claim 48, wherein the second antibody is selected from the group consisting of a DR4 antibody, a TNF antibody, a B7 antibody, a CD40 ligand antibody, a CD40 antibody, a CD20 antibody, and a Fas antibody.
50. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent is an apoptosis inducing compound.
51. The use of claim 50, wherein the apoptosis-inducing compound is, bisindolylmaleimide VIII (BisVIII), SN-50 or LY294002.
52. The use of claim 1, 10 or 23, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are selected from the group consisting of chemotherapeutic agents, members of the TNF family, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-viral, anti-retroviral, anti-opportunistic agents, antibiotics, immunosuppressive agents, immunoglobulins, antimalarial agents, anti-rheumatoid arthritis agents, cytokines, chemokines, growth factors, and second antibody that promotes apoptosis or blocks proliferation of the target cells.
53. The use of claim 23, wherein the inflammatory or autoimmune disease is selected from the group consisting of systemic lupus erythematosus, Hashimoto's disease, rheumatoid arthritis, graft-versus-host disease, Sjogren's syndrome, pernicious anemia, Addison disease, scleroderma, Goodpasture's syndrome, Crohn's disease, autoimmune hemolytic anemia, sterility, myasthenia gravis, multiple sclerosis, Basedow's disease, thrombotic throbocytopenia, thrombopenia purpura, insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, allergy; asthma, atopic disease; arteriosclerosis; myocarditis; cardiomyopathy; glomerular nephritis; hypoplastic anemia.
54. The use of claim 23, wherein the medicament is further suitable for use with radiation therapy.
55. A composition comprising (a) an antibody that specifically binds a TRAIL receptor DR5, wherein said antibody, in its soluble form, has *in vivo* and *in*

vitro apoptosis-inducing activity in target cells expressing DR5 and (b) one or more therapeutic agents.

56. The composition of claim 55, wherein the therapeutic agent or agents are selected from the group consisting of chemotherapeutic agents, members of the TNF family, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-viral, antiretroviral, anti-opportunistic agents, antibiotics, immunosuppressive agents, immunoglobulins, antimalarial agents, disease modifying anti-rheumatic drug, cytokines, chemokines, growth factors, and second antibodies that promotes apoptosis or blocks proliferation of the target cells.
57. The composition of claim 56, further comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
58. An *in vitro* method of selectively inducing apoptosis in target cells expressing DR5, comprising the steps of (a) contacting the target cells with a therapeutic quantity of an antibody that specifically binds a TRAIL receptor DR5, wherein said antibody, in its soluble form, has *in vivo* and *in vitro* apoptosis--inducing activity in target cells expressing DR5 and (b) contacting the target cells with a therapeutic quantity of one or more therapeutic agents.
59. An *in vitro* method of inhibiting proliferation of target cells expressing DR5, comprising the steps of (a) contacting the target cells with a therapeutic quantity of an antibody that specifically binds a TRAIL receptor DR5, wherein said antibody, in its soluble form, has *in vivo* and *in vitro* apoptosis - inducing activity in cells expressing DR5 and (b) contacting the target cells with a therapeutic quantity of one or more therapeutic agents.
60. A method according to claim 58 or 59 wherein the antibody binds a TRAIL receptor DR5 in the absence of crosslinking, has *in vitro* cell death-inducing activity in its soluble form at concentrations less than 1μg/mL in target cells expressing DR5 and, *in vivo*, tumorcidal activity in tumour cells expressing DR5 and wherein the antibody does not bind TRAIL receptor DR4, RcR1 or DcR2.